

NATIONAL FUEL GAS CODE

Secretariats



American Gas Association

(Administrative)

1515 Wilson Boulevard
Arlington, VA 22209



National Fire Protection
Association

1 Batterymarch Park
Quincy, MA 02269



An American National Standard

NFPA 54 ANSI Z223.1

August 28, 1992

NOTICE

All questions or other communications relating to this document should be sent to the American Gas Association Laboratories and the National Fire Protection Association Headquarters addressed to the attention of the committee responsible for the document.

For information on obtaining Formal Interpretations of the document, proposing amendments for Committee consideration, and appeals on matters relating to the content of the document, write to the Chairman, American National Standards Committee Z223, 8501 East Pleasant Valley Road, Cleveland, Ohio 44131 and the Secretary, Standards Council, National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, P.O. Box 9101, Quincy, MA 02269-9101.

A statement written or oral that is not processed in accordance with the interpretation procedure of the Z223 Committee or with Section 16 of the NFPA Regulations Governing Committee Projects shall not be considered the position respectively of the Z223 Committee or the NFPA, and shall not be considered nor relied upon as a Formal Interpretation.

Users of this document should consult applicable federal, state, and local laws and regulations. The American Gas Association and the National Fire Protection Association do not, by the publication of this document, intend to urge action that is not in compliance with applicable laws, and this document may not be construed as doing so.

Fifth Edition – 1992

Printed in U.S.A.

Copyright © 1992 by the American Gas Association and the National Fire Protection Association. Permission is granted to republish in full the material herein in laws, ordinances, regulations, administrative orders, or similar documents issued by public authorities. All others desiring permission to reproduce this material in whole or in part shall consult the American Gas Association Laboratories, 8501 East Pleasant Valley Road, Cleveland, Ohio 44131 and the National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, P.O. Box 9101, Quincy, MA 02269-9101. (For further explanation, see the Policy Concerning the Adoption, Printing and Publication of NFPA Documents, which is available upon request from the NFPA.)

NFPA 54

National Fuel Gas Code

1992 Edition

Reference: 6.24.1
TIA 92-1 (NFPA 54)

Pursuant to Section 4 of the NFPA Regulations Governing Committee Projects, the National Fire Protection Association has issued the following Tentative Interim Amendment to NFPA 54, *National Fuel Gas Code*, 1992 edition. The TIA was processed by the National Fuel Gas Code Committee and was issued by the Standards Council on April 6, 1994, with an effective date of April 26, 1994.

A Tentative Interim Amendment is tentative because it has not been processed through the entire standards-making procedures. It is interim because it is effective only between editions of the standard. A TIA automatically becomes a proposal of the proponent for the next edition of the standard; as such, it then is subject to all of the procedures of the standards-making process.

1. Add two Exceptions to 6.24.1 to read as follows:

Exception No. 1: Where approved by the authority having jurisdiction, one listed wall-mounted unvented room heater equipped with an oxygen depletion safety shutoff system shall be permitted to be installed in a bathroom provided that the input rating shall not exceed 6000 Btu per hour (1760 W/hr) and combustion and ventilation air is provided as specified in 6.1(b).

Exception No. 2: Where approved by the authority having jurisdiction, one listed wall-mounted unvented room heater equipped with an oxygen depletion safety shutoff system shall be permitted to be installed in a bedroom provided that the input rating shall not exceed 10,000 Btu per hour (2930 W/hr) and combustion and ventilation air is provided as specified in 6.1(b).

National Fuel Gas Code
CHARLES S. MORGAN LIBRARY
ANSI Z223.1-1992
NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION
NFPA 54-1992
1 BATTERYMARCH PARK
QUINCY, MA 02269-9101
1992 Edition of ANSI Z223.1-NFPA 54

This 1992 edition incorporates changes to the 1988 edition. It was adopted by the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) on July 17, 1992 and approved by the American National Standards Institute, Inc. (ANSI) on August 28, 1992. The ANSI designation is Z223.1-1992. The NFPA designation is NFPA 54-1992.

Changes, other than editorial, from the 1988 edition are denoted by a vertical line in the margin.

PREFACE

(This Preface is informative and is not part of the *Code*.)

This *Code* offers general criteria for the installation and operation of gas piping and gas equipment on consumers' premises. It is the cumulative result of years of experience of many individuals and many organizations acquainted with the installation of gas piping and equipment designed for utilization of gaseous fuels. It is intended to promote public safety by providing guidelines for the safer and more satisfactory utilization of gas.

Changes in this *Code* may become necessary from time to time. When any revision is deemed advisable, recommendations should be forwarded to the Chairman, Accredited Standards Committee Z223, 8501 East Pleasant Valley Road, Cleveland, Ohio 44131, and the Secretary, Standards Council, National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, P.O. Box 9101, Quincy, MA 02269-9101.

HISTORY OF DEVELOPMENT OF NATIONAL FUEL GAS CODE

(This History is informative and is not part of the *Code*.)

In October 1967 representatives of the American Gas Association, the American Society of Mechanical Engineers, and the National Fire Protection Association met as a Conference Group on Piping and Installation Standards to consider the development of a single National Fuel Gas Code. This conference was the result of the expressed need within the gas industry, among public safety authorities, insurance groups, architects, designers, and builders for one Code that would cover all facets of fuel gas piping and appliance installation downstream from meter set assemblies or other components comprising the gas service entrance to the consumer premises.

At a January 1968 meeting, the conference group developed the objectives and scope of a proposed National Standards Committee. The group envisioned the combining of the following standards into a single National Fuel Gas Code:

American National Standard Installation of Gas Appliances and Gas Piping, ANSI Z21.30 (NFPA 54); Installation of Gas Piping and Gas Equipment on Industrial Premises and Certain Other Premises, ANSI Z83.1 (NFPA 54A); and Fuel Gas Piping, ASME B31.2.

The proposed scope at that time limited coverage of piping systems to 60 psig. The National Standards Committee agreed to relinquish Z21.30 (NFPA 54), Z83.1 (NFPA 54A), and applicable portions of ASME B31.2 covering piping systems up to and including 60 psig to a new National Fuel Gas Code Committee, cosponsored by the three Associations.

On August 13, 1971, the American National Standards Institute approved the scope of activities and the formation of the National Standards Committee on National Fuel Gas Code, Z223.

In order to establish a National Fuel Gas Code to satisfy the immediate needs of the gas industry, at its December 6, 1972 organizational meeting the Z223 Committee combined NFPA 54-1969 and Z83.1-1972 with only those editorial revisions necessary to reflect the scope of the new *Code*. Further revisions of the *Code* would be necessary to incorporate pertinent coverage for fuel gas piping from ASME B31.2-1968.

The first edition of the *Code* was issued in 1974. The American Gas Association and the National Fire Protection Association have continued cosponsorship of the *Code* following the first edition.

The second edition of the *Code*, incorporating pertinent portions of B31.2, was issued in 1980. The third and fourth editions were issued in 1984 and 1988, respectively. The scope of the *Code* was expanded in 1988 to include piping systems up to and including 125 psig.

This, the fifth edition of the *Code*, includes the following revisions: adding new coverage for venting category I, fan-assisted appliances, including new vent sizing tables; addressing the installation of corrugated stainless steel tubing house piping systems requiring compliance with the standard for Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing, ANSI/AGA LC 1-1991; recognizing the use of listed gas convenience outlets; adding coverage for decorative gas appliances for installation in vented fireplaces that can be installed in bedrooms and bathrooms; adding coverage for direct gas-fired industrial air heaters; and referencing the *Standard for Compressed Natural Gas (CNG) Vehicular Fuel Systems*, NFPA 52-1992, relative to the installation of natural gas vehicle fueling stations. Extensive editorial revisions have been included to make the *Code* more usable, adoptable, and enforceable.

COMMITTEE ON NATIONAL FUEL GAS CODE

J. J. Drechsler, Chairman

Michael R. Gorham, Vice Chairman

Allen J. Callahan, Administrative Secretary (Nonvoting)

Representing American Gas Association:

J. J. Drechsler

Glenn Frye (Z223 Committee only)

Kenneth W. Hoggard

Arthur J. Thompson

Representing Alliance of American Insurers:

Robert E. Rhead

Representing American Insurance Services Group, Inc.:

Wallace D. Malmstedt

Representing American Society of Testing and Materials:

Douglas W. DeWerth (Nonvoting, Z223 Committee only)

Representing Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers:

Issac P. Sargunam

Representing Factory Mutual System:

Leo P. Donovan

Armand Brandao (NFPA Committee only)

Representing Fire Marshals Association of North America:

John W. Dries, Jr.

Representing Gas Appliance Manufacturers Association:

Paul E. Beach

Ross K. Burnside

Russell E. Dockum

Wilbur Haag, Jr.

Ted Zanias (Alternate, NFPA only)

Representing Hydronics Institute:

Harvey G. Stenger

Individual Member:

William S. Bigelow

AGA Staff Liaison:
Allen J. Callahan

Representing International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials:

Robert Picott

Arthur J. Lettenmaier (Alternate, Z223 Committee only)

John W. Meacham (Alternate, NFPA Committee only)

Representing National Association of Home Builders:

P. S. Vishwanath

Representing National Association of Plumbing-Heating-Cooling Contractors:

Richard E. White

Milton Snyder (Alternate, Z223 Committee only)

Representing National Chimney Sweep Guild:

James P. Brewer

Representing National Fire Protection Association:

Theodore C. Lemoff (Z223 Committee only)

Representing National Propane Gas Association:

Michael R. Gorham

Ty V. Lotz (Alternate)

Representing National Park Service:

Kenneth R. Rueff

Representing Southern Building Code Congress:

Appointment Pending

Richard Vognild (Alternate, Z223 Committee only)

Representing Underwriters Laboratories:

Enno Toomsalu

Thad Bukowski

NFPA Staff Liaison:
Theodore C. Lemoff

The National Fuel Gas Code Committee is a Committee functioning jointly under the procedures of the American National Standards Institute and the National Fire Protection Association and, accordingly, the *National Fuel Gas Code* bears two designations, ANSI Z223.1 and NFPA 54. In the ANSI context, the *Code* is prepared by the American National Standards Committee on National Fuel Gas Code, Z223, cosponsored by the American Gas Association (Administrative Secretariat) and the National Fire Protection Association. In the NFPA context the Committee is an NFPA Technical Committee.

This list represents the membership at the time the Committee was balloted on the text of this edition. Since that time changes in the membership may have occurred.

NOTE: Membership on a Committee shall not in and of itself constitute an endorsement of the Association or of any document developed by the Committee on which the member serves.

CONTENTS

Part 1 — General	1
1.1 Scope	1
1.2 Alternate Materials, Equipment, and Procedures	2
1.3 Retroactivity	3
1.4 Qualified Agency	3
1.5 Interruption of Service	3
1.6 Prevention of Accidental Ignition	4
1.7 Definitions	4
Part 2 — Gas Piping System Design, Materials, and Components . . .	28
2.1 Piping Plan	28
2.2 Provision for Location of Point of Delivery	28
2.3 Interconnections Between Gas Piping Systems	28
2.4 Sizing of Gas Piping Systems	28
2.5 Piping System Operating Pressure Limitations	29
2.6 Acceptable Piping Materials and Joining Methods	30
2.7 Gas Meters	35
2.8 Gas Pressure Regulators	36
2.9 Overpressure Protection Devices	38
2.10 Back Pressure Protection	40
2.11 Low Pressure Protection	40
2.12 Shutoff Valves	41
2.13 Expansion and Flexibility	41
Part 3 — Gas Piping Installation	42
3.1 Piping Underground	42
3.2 Aboveground Piping Outside	43
3.3 Piping in Buildings	44
3.4 Concealed Piping in Buildings	45
3.5 Piping in Vertical Chases	46
3.6 Gas Pipe Turns	47
3.7 Drips and Sediment Traps	48
3.8 Outlets	48
3.9 Branch Pipe Connection	49
3.10 Manual Gas Shutoff Valves	49
3.11 Prohibited Devices	50
3.12 Systems Containing Gas-Air Mixtures Outside the Flammable Range	50
3.13 Systems Containing Flammable Gas-Air Mixtures	50
3.14 Electrical Bonding and Grounding	53
3.15 Electrical Circuits	53
3.16 Electrical Connections	53
Part 4 — Inspection, Testing, and Purging	54
4.1 Pressure Testing and Inspection	54

4.2	System and Equipment Leakage Test	56
4.3	Purging	57
Part 5	Equipment Installation	59
5.1	General	59
5.2	Accessibility and Clearance	64
5.3	Air for Combustion and Ventilation	64
5.4	Equipment on Roofs	69
5.5	Equipment Connections to Building Piping	71
5.6	Electrical	73
5.7	Room Temperature Thermostats	74
Part 6	Installation of Specific Equipment	75
6.1	General	75
6.2	Air Conditioning Equipment	75
6.3	Central Heating Boilers and Furnaces	77
6.4	Clothes Dryers	86
6.5	Conversion Burners	87
6.6	Decorative Appliances for Installation in Vented Fireplaces	87
6.7	Decorative Appliances, Vented	88
6.8	Direct Make-Up Air Heaters	90
6.9	Industrial Air Heaters	91
6.10	Duct Furnaces	93
6.11	Floor Furnaces	94
6.12	Food Service Equipment, Floor Mounted	96
6.13	Food Service Equipment Counter Appliances	99
6.14	Hot Plates and Laundry Stoves	100
6.15	Household Cooking Appliances	100
6.16	Illuminating Appliances	102
6.17	Incinerators, Commercial-Industrial	103
6.18	Incinerators, Domestic	104
6.19	Infrared Heaters	105
6.20	Open Top Broiler Units	106
6.21	Outdoor Cooking Appliances	107
6.22	Pool Heaters	107
6.23	Refrigerators	108
6.24	Room Heaters	108
6.25	Sauna Heaters	109
6.26	Stationary Gas Engines	110
6.27	Gas-Fired Toilets	111
6.28	Unit Heaters	112
6.29	Wall Furnaces	113
6.30	Water Heaters	115
6.31	Compressed Natural Gas (CNG) Vehicular Fuel Systems	117

Part 7 — Venting of Equipment	118
7.1 General	118
7.2 Specification for Venting	118
7.3 Design and Construction	119
7.4 Type of Venting System to be Used	120
7.5 Masonry, Metal, and Factory-Built Chimneys	121
7.6 Gas Vents	124
7.7 Single-Wall Metal Pipe	129
7.8 Venting System Location	130
7.9 Condensation Drain	131
7.10 Vent Connectors for Category I Gas Utilization Equipment	131
7.11 Vent Connectors for Category II, Category III, and Category IV Gas Utilization Equipment	138
7.12 Draft Hoods and Draft Controls	138
7.13 Manually Operated Dampers	139
7.14 Automatically Operated Vent Dampers	139
7.15 Obstructions	139
Part 8 — Procedures to be Followed to Place Equipment in Operation	140
8.1 Adjusting the Burner Input	140
8.2 Primary Air Adjustment	140
8.3 Safety Shutoff Devices	140
8.4 Automatic Ignition	140
8.5 Protective Devices	140
8.6 Checking the Draft	140
8.7 Operating Instructions	141
Part 9 — Modifications to Existing Appliance Installations for the Purpose of Fuel Conservation	144
9.1 Safety Inspection	144
9.2 Reduction of Vent Connector Size	144
9.3 Automatic Vent Damper Device Installation	144
Part 10 — Sizing Tables	144
Part 11 — Sizing of Category I Venting Systems	169
11.1 Definitions	169
Part 12 — Referenced Publications	197
Appendix A	200
Appendix B — Coordination of Gas Utilization Equipment Design, Construction, and Maintenance	205

Appendix C — Sizing and Capacities of Gas Piping	210
Appendix D — Suggested Method for Checking for Leakage	219
Appendix E — Suggested Emergency Procedure for Gas Leaks . . .	221
Appendix F — Flow of Gas Through Fixed Orifices	222
Appendix G — Sizing of Venting Systems Serving Appliances Equipped with Draft Hoods, Category I Appliances, and Appliances Listed for Use with Type B Vents . . .	229
Appendix H — Recommended Procedure for Safety Inspection of an Existing Appliance Installation	252
Appendix I — Recommended Procedure for Installing Electrically Operated Automatic Vent Damper Devices on Existing Appliances	254
Appendix J — Recommended Procedure for Installing Mechanically Actuated Automatic Vent Damper Devices on Existing Appliances	256
Appendix K — Recommended Procedure for Installing Thermally Actuated Automatic Vent Damper Devices on Existing Appliances	258
Appendix L — Referenced Publications	260
Index	266

LIST OF TABLES AND ILLUSTRATIONS

TABLE		PAGE
I.	Specifications for Threading Metallic Pipe	33
II.	Support of Piping	45
III.	Length of Gas Line Requiring Purging for Servicing or Modification	57
IV.	Length of Piping Requiring Purging Before Placing in Operation	58
V.	Clearances to Combustible Material for Furnaces and Boilers Installed in Rooms Which Are Large in Comparison With Size of Equipment, Except as Provided in 6.3.1(a)	78
VI.	Reduction of Clearances with Specified Forms of Protection	80
VII.	Free Opening Area of Chimney Damper for Venting Flue Gases from Unlisted Decorative Appliances for Installation in Vented Fireplaces	89
VIII.	Clearances for Unlisted Outdoor Open-Flame Illuminating Appliances	103
IX.	Type of Venting System to be Used	121
X.	Clearances for Connectors	133
XI.	Minimum Thickness for Galvanized Steel Vent Connectors for Low-Heat Appliances	134
XII.	Minimum Thickness for Steel Vent Connectors for Medium Heat Equipment and Commercial and Industrial Incinerators	134
XIII.	Gas Input to Burner in Cubic Feet per Hour	142
	Pipe and Tubing Sizing Tables (Part 10)	145
	Category I Vent Sizing Tables (Part 11)	172

FIGURE		PAGE
1.	Equipment Located in Confined Spaces; All Air from Inside the Building	66
2.	Equipment Located in Confined Spaces; All Air from Outdoors – Inlet Air from Ventilated Crawl Space and Outlet Air to Ventilated Attic	67
3.	Equipment Located in Confined Spaces; All Air from Outdoors Through Ventilated Attic	68
4.	Equipment Located in Confined Spaces; All Air from Outdoors	69
5.	Method of Installing a Tee Fitting Sediment Trap	73
6.	Extent of Protection Necessary to Reduce Clearances from Gas Equipment or Vent Connectors	82
7.	Wall Protector Clearance Reduction System	83
8.	Masonry Clearance Reduction System	84
9.	Typical Sauna Heater Installation	111
10.	Installation of Type B-W Gas Vents for Vented Wall Furnaces	114
11.	Typical Gravity Circulating Tank Type Installation	116
12.	Typical Termination Locations for Chimneys and Single-Wall Metal Pipes Serving Residential-Type and Low-Heat Equipment	123
13.	Gas Vent Termination Locations	127
14.	Plan View of Practical Separation Method for Multistory Gas Venting	128

NATIONAL FUEL GAS CODE

ANSI Z223.1-1992 NFPA 54-1992

NOTICE: An asterisk (*) following the number or letter designating a paragraph indicates explanatory material on that paragraph in Appendix A.

Information on referenced publications can be found in Part 12 and Appendix L.

Part 1

General

1.1 Scope.

1.1.1 Applicability.

(a) This *Code* is a safety code that shall apply to the installation of fuel gas piping systems, fuel gas utilization equipment, and related accessories as follows:

1. Coverage of piping systems shall extend from the point of delivery to the connections with each gas utilization device. For other than undiluted liquefied petroleum gas systems, the point of delivery shall be considered the outlet of the service meter assembly, or the outlet of the service regulator or service shutoff valve when no meter is provided. For undiluted liquefied petroleum gas systems, the point of delivery shall be considered the outlet of the first stage pressure regulator.

2. The maximum operating pressure shall be 125 psig (862 kPa gauge).

Exception No. 1: Piping systems for gas-air mixtures within the flammable range are limited to a maximum pressure of 10 psig (69 kPa gauge).

Exception No. 2: LP-Gas piping systems are limited to 20 psig (140 kPa gauge), except as provided in 2.5.2.

3. Piping systems requirements shall include design, materials, components, fabrication, assembly, installation, testing, inspection, operation, and maintenance.

4. Requirements for gas utilization equipment and related accessories shall include installation, combustion, and ventilation air and venting.

(b) This *Code* shall not apply to the following (reference standards for some of which appear in Appendix L):

1. Portable LP-Gas equipment of all types that are not connected to a fixed fuel piping system

2. Installation of farm equipment such as brooders, dehydrators, dryers, and irrigation equipment

3. Raw material (feedstock) applications except for piping to special atmosphere generators
4. Oxygen-fuel gas cutting and welding systems
5. Industrial gas applications using such gases as acetylene and acetylenic compounds, hydrogen, ammonia, carbon monoxide, oxygen, and nitrogen
6. Petroleum refineries, pipeline compressor or pumping stations, loading terminals, compounding plants, refinery tank farms, and natural gas processing plants
7. Large integrated chemical plants or portions of such plants where flammable or combustible liquids or gases are produced by chemical reactions or used in chemical reactions
8. LP-Gas installations at utility gas plants
9. Liquefied natural gas (LNG) installations
10. Fuel gas piping in power and atomic energy plants
11. Proprietary items of equipment, apparatus, or instruments such as gas generating sets, compressors, and calorimeters
12. LP-Gas equipment for vaporization, gas mixing, and gas manufacturing
13. LP-Gas piping for buildings under construction or renovations that is not to become part of the permanent building piping system, i.e., temporary fixed piping for building heat
14. Installation of LP-Gas systems for railroad switch heating
15. Installation of LP-Gas and compressed natural gas systems on vehicles
16. Gas piping, meters, gas pressure regulators, and other appurtenances used by the serving gas supplier in distribution of gas, other than undiluted LP-Gas
17. Building design and construction, except as specified herein.

1.1.2 Other Standards. In applying this *Code*, reference shall also be made to the manufacturers' instructions and the serving gas supplier regulations.

1.2 Alternate Materials, Equipment, and Procedures. The provisions of this *Code* are not intended to prevent the use of any material, method of construction, or installation procedure not specifically prescribed by this *Code*, provided any such alternate is acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction (*see Section 1.7, Definitions*). The authority having jurisdiction shall require that sufficient evidence be submitted to substantiate any claims made regarding the safety of such alternates.

1.3 Retroactivity. Unless otherwise stated, the provisions of this *Code* shall not be applied retroactively to existing systems that were in compliance with the provisions of the *Code* in effect at the time of installation.

1.4 Qualified Agency. Installation and replacement of gas piping, gas utilization equipment, or accessories, and repair and servicing of equipment, shall be performed only by a qualified agency. The term "qualified agency" means any individual, firm, corporation, or company that either in person or through a representative is engaged in and is responsible for (a) the installation or replacement of gas piping or (b) the connection, installation, repair, or servicing of equipment, that is experienced in such work, familiar with all precautions required, and has complied with all the requirements of the authority having jurisdiction.

1.5 Interruption of Service.

1.5.1 Notification of Interrupted Service. It shall be the duty of the qualified agency, when the gas supply is to be turned off, to notify all affected users.

Where two or more users are served from the same supply system, precautions shall be exercised to assure that only service to the proper user is turned off.

Exception: In cases of emergency, affected users shall be notified as soon as possible of the actions taken by the qualified agency.

1.5.2 Before Turning Gas Off. Before turning off the gas to the premises, or section of piping to be serviced, for the purpose of installation, repair, replacement, or maintenance of gas piping or gas utilization equipment, all equipment shutoff valves shall be turned off.

A leakage test shall be performed to determine that all equipment is turned off in the piping section to be affected.

NOTE: See Appendix D for a method of leakage testing.

1.5.3 Turn Gas Off. All gas piping installations, equipment installations, and modifications to existing systems shall be performed with the gas turned off and the piping purged in accordance with Section 4.3.

Exception: Hot taps shall be permitted if they are installed by trained and experienced crews utilizing equipment specifically designed for such a purpose.

1.5.4 Work Interruptions. When interruptions in work occur while repairs or alterations are being made to an existing piping system, the system shall be left in safe condition.

1.6 Prevention of Accidental Ignition.

1.6.1 Potential Ignition Sources. Where working on piping that contains or has contained gas:

(a) Provisions for electrical continuity shall be made before alterations are made in a metallic piping system.

(b) Smoking, open flames, lanterns, welding, or other sources of ignition shall not be permitted.

(c) A metallic electrical bond shall be installed around the location of cuts in metallic gas pipes made by other than cutting torches. If cutting torches, welding, or other sources of ignition are unavoidable, it shall be determined that all sources of gas or gas-air mixtures have been secured and that all flammable gas or liquids have been cleared from the area. Piping shall be purged as required in Section 4.3 before welding or cutting with a torch is attempted.

(d) Artificial illumination shall be restricted to listed safety-type flashlights and safety lamps. Electric switches shall not be operated, on or off.

1.6.2 Handling of Flammable Liquids.

(a) *Drip Liquids.* Liquid that is removed from a drip in existing gas piping shall be handled to avoid spillage or ignition. The gas supplier shall be notified when drip liquids are removed.

(b) *Other Flammable Liquids.* Flammable liquids used by the installer shall be handled with precautions and shall not be left within the premises from the end of one working day to the beginning of the next.

1.7 Definitions.

The terms used in this *Code* are defined within the parameters of the scope of the *Code*.

Accessible. Having access to but which first may require the removal of a panel, door, or similar covering of the item described.

Accessible, Readily. Having direct access without the need of removing or moving any panel, door, or similar covering of the item described.

Air, Circulating. Air for cooling, heating, or ventilation distributed to habitable spaces.

Air Conditioning. The treatment of air so as to control simultaneously its temperature, humidity, cleanness, and distribution to meet the requirements of a conditioned space.

Air Shutter. An adjustable device for varying the size of the primary air inlet(s).

Ambient Temperature. The temperature of the surrounding medium, usually used to refer to the temperature of the air in which a structure is situated or a device operates.

Appliance (Equipment). Any device that utilizes gas as a fuel or raw material to produce light, heat, power, refrigeration, or air conditioning.

Appliance, Automatically Controlled. Appliances equipped with an automatic burner ignition and safety shutoff device and other automatic devices that:

(a) Accomplish complete turn-on and shutoff of the gas to the main burner or burners

(b) Graduate the gas supply to the burner or burners, but do not effect complete shutoff of the gas.

Appliance, Fan-Assisted Combustion. An appliance equipped with an integral mechanical means to either draw or force products of combustion through the combustion chamber or heat exchanger.

Appliance, Low-Heat. An appliance such as a food service range, pressing machine boiler operating at any pressure, bake oven, candy furnace, stereotype furnace, drying and curing appliance, and other process appliances in which materials are heated or melted at temperatures (excluding flue-gas temperatures) not exceeding 600°F (315°C).

Approved. Acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

Atmospheric Pressure. The pressure of the weight of air and water vapor on the surface of the earth, approximately 14.7 pounds per square inch (psia) (101 kPa absolute) at sea level.

Authority Having Jurisdiction. The organization, office or individual responsible for “approving” equipment, an installation or a procedure.

NOTE: The phrase “authority having jurisdiction” is used in this standard in a broad manner since jurisdictions and “approval” agencies vary as do their responsibilities. Where public safety is primary, the “authority having jurisdiction” may be a federal, state, local, or other regional department or individual such as a fire chief, fire marshal, chief of a fire prevention bureau, labor department, health department, building official, electrical inspector, or others having statutory authority. For insurance purposes, an insurance inspection department, rating bureau, or other insurance company representative may be the “authority having jurisdiction.” In many circumstances the property owner or his delegated agent assumes the role of the “authority having jurisdiction”; at government installations, the commanding officer or departmental official may be the “authority having jurisdiction.”

Automatic Damper Regulator. A mechanically or electrically actuated device designed to maintain a constant draft on combustion equipment.

Automatic Firecheck. A device for stopping the progress of a flame front in burner mixture lines (flashback) and for automatically shutting off the fuel-air mixture.

Present units are customarily equipped with spring or weight loaded valves released for closure by a fusible link or by movement of bimetallic elements; they are also equipped with metallic screens for stopping the progress of a flame front.

Automatic Gas Shutoff Device. A device constructed so that the attainment of a water temperature in a hot water supply system in excess of some predetermined limit acts in such a way as to cause the gas to the system to be shut off.

Automatic Ignition. Ignition of gas at the burner(s) when the gas controlling device is turned on, including reignition if the flames on the burner(s) have been extinguished by means other than by the closing of the gas controlling device.

Back Pressure. Pressure against which a fluid is flowing, resulting from friction in lines, restrictions in pipes, valves, pressure in vessel to which fluid is flowing, hydrostatic head, or other impediment that causes resistance to fluid flow.

Backfire Preventer. (*See Safety Blowout.*)

Baffle. An object placed in an appliance to change the direction of, or retard, the flow of air, air-gas mixtures, or flue gases.

Barometric Draft Regulator. A balanced damper device attached to a chimney, vent connector, breeching, or flue gas manifold to protect combustion equipment by controlling chimney draft. A double-acting barometric draft regulator is one whose balancing damper is free to move in either direction to protect combustion equipment from both excessive draft and backdraft.

Boiler, Low-Pressure. A self-contained gas-burning appliance for supplying steam or hot water.

(a) *Hot Water Heating Boiler.* A boiler in which no steam is generated, from which hot water is circulated for heating purposes and then returned to the boiler, and that operates at water pressures not exceeding 160 psig (1100 kPa gauge) and at water temperatures not exceeding 250°F (121°C) at or near the boiler outlet.

(b) *Hot Water Supply Boiler.* A boiler, completely filled with water, which furnishes hot water to be used externally to itself, and that operates at water pressures not exceeding 160 psig (1100 kPa gauge) and at water temperatures not exceeding 250°F (121°C) at or near the boiler outlet.

(c) *Steam Heating Boiler.* A boiler in which steam is generated and that operates at a steam pressure not exceeding 15 psig (100 kPa gauge).

Branch Line. Gas piping that conveys gas from a supply line to the appliance.

Breeching. (*See Vent Connector.*)

Broiler. A general term including broilers, salamanders, barbecues, and other devices cooking primarily by radiated heat, excepting toasters.

Btu. Abbreviation for British thermal unit, which is the quantity of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 pound of water 1 degree Fahrenheit (equivalent to 1055 joules).

Burner. A device for the final conveyance of the gas, or a mixture of gas and air, to the combustion zone.

(a) *Forced-Draft.* (*See Power Burner.*)

(b) *Induced-Draft.* A burner that depends on draft induced by a fan that is an integral part of the appliance and is located downstream from the burner.

(c) *Injection (Bunsen) Type.* A burner employing the energy of a jet of gas to inject air for combustion into the burner and mix it with the gas.

1. *Atmospheric Injection Type.* A burner in which the air at atmospheric pressure is injected into the burner by a jet of gas.

(d) *Power.* A burner in which either gas or air, or both, are supplied at a pressure exceeding, for gas, the line pressure, and for air, atmospheric pressure; this added pressure being applied at the burner. A burner for which air for combustion is supplied by a fan ahead of the appliance is commonly designated as a forced-draft burner.

1. *Premixing.* A power burner in which all or nearly all of the air for combustion is mixed with the gas as primary air.

(e) *Fan-Assisted.* A burner that uses either induced or forced draft.

Carbon Steel. By common custom, steel is considered to be carbon steel when no minimum content is specified or required for aluminum, boron, chromium, cobalt, columbium, molybdenum, nickel, titanium, tungsten, vanadium, or zirconium, or any other element added to obtain a desired alloying effect; when the specified minimum for copper does not exceed 0.40 percent; or when the maximum content specified for any of the following elements does not exceed the percentages noted: manganese 1.65, silicon 0.60, copper 0.60.

Central Premix System. A system that distributes flammable gas-air mixtures to two or more remote stations and is employed to provide one or more of the following:

(a) Wide in-plant distribution of a centrally controlled gas-air mixture

(b) A wider range of mixture pressures (frequently in the 1 to 5 psig range) (7 to 34 kPa gauge) than is available from other gas-air mixing equipment

(c) Close control of gas-air ratios over a wide turndown range (often 20 to 1 or more)

(d) Ability to change total connected burner port area without installing new mixing devices or inserts.

Central premix systems may either proportion the flows of pressurized air and pressurized gas for subsequent mixing in a downstream tee or comparable fitting, or they may draw room air at essentially atmospheric pressure through a proportioning mixing valve and then through a blower or compressor downstream.

Chimney. (*See also Gas Vent, Vent, and Venting System.*) One or more passageways, vertical or nearly so, for conveying flue or vent gases to the outside atmosphere.

(a) *Factory-Built Chimney.* A chimney composed of listed factory-built components assembled in accordance with the terms of listing to form the completed chimney.

(b) *Masonry Chimney.* A field-constructed chimney of solid masonry units, bricks, stones, listed masonry chimney units, or reinforced portland cement concrete, lined with suitable chimney flue liners.

(c) *Metal Chimney.* A field-constructed chimney of metal.

Clothes Dryer. A device used to dry wet laundry by means of heat derived from the combustion of fuel gases. Dryer classifications are as follows:

(a) *Type 1.* Factory-built package, multiple produced. Primarily used in family living environment. May or may not be coin-operated for public use. Usually the smallest unit physically and in function output.

(b) *Type 2.* Factory-built package, multiple produced. Used in business with direct intercourse of the function with the public. May or may not be operated by public or hired attendant. May or may not be coin-operated. Not designed for use in individual family living environment. May be small, medium, or large in relative size.

Combustible Material. As pertaining to materials adjacent to or in contact with heat-producing appliances, vent connectors, gas vents, chimneys, steam and hot water pipes, and warm air ducts shall mean materials made of or surfaced with wood, compressed paper, plant fibers, or other materials that are capable of being ignited and burned. Such material shall be considered combustible even though flame-proofed, fire-retardant treated, or plastered.

Combustion. As used herein, the rapid oxidation of fuel gases accompanied by the production of heat, or heat and light. Complete combustion of a fuel is possible only in the presence of an adequate supply of oxygen.

Combustion Chamber. The portion of an appliance within which combustion occurs.

Combustion Products. Constituents resulting from the combustion of a fuel with the oxygen of the air, including the inerts but excluding excess air.

Concealed Gas Piping. Gas piping, that, when in place in a finished building, would require removal of permanent construction to gain access to the piping.

Condensate (Condensation). The liquid that separates from a gas (including flue gas) due to a reduction in temperature or increase in pressure.

Consumption. The maximum amount of gas per unit of time, usually expressed in cubic feet per hour, or Btu per hour, required for the operation of the appliance or appliances supplied.

Control Piping. All piping, valves, and fittings used to interconnect air, gas, or hydraulically operated control apparatus or instrument transmitters and receivers.

Controls. Devices designed to regulate the gas, air, water, or electrical supply to a gas appliance. These may be manual or automatic.

Convenience Outlet, Gas. A permanently mounted, hand operated device providing a means for connecting and disconnecting an appliance or an appliance connector to the gas supply piping. The device includes an integral, manually operated gas valve with a nondisplaceable valve member so that disconnection can be accomplished only when the manually operated gas valve is in the closed position.

Conversion Burner, Gas. A unit consisting of a burner and its controls utilizing gaseous fuel for installation in an appliance originally utilizing another fuel.

(a) *Firing Door Type.* A conversion burner specifically for boiler or furnace firing door installation.

(b) *Inshot Type.* A conversion burner normally for boiler or furnace ash pit installation and fired in a horizontal position.

(c) *Upshot Type.* A conversion burner normally for boiler or furnace ash pit installation and fired in a vertical position at approximately grate level.

Counter Appliances, Gas. (*See Food Service Equipment, Gas.*)

Cubic Foot (Cu. Ft.) of Gas. The amount of gas that would occupy 1 cubic foot (0.3 m) when at a temperature of 60°F (16°C), saturated with water vapor and under a pressure equivalent to that of 30.0 inches (101 kPa) mercury column.

Decorative Appliance for Installation in a Vented Fireplace. A self-contained, freestanding, fuel-gas burning appliance designed for installation only in a vented fireplace and whose primary function lies in the aesthetic effect of the flame.

(a) *Coal Basket.* An open-flame-type appliance consisting of a metal basket filled with simulated coals that gives the appearance of a coal fire when in operation.

(b) *Fireplace Insert.* Consists of an open-flame radiant-type appliance mounted in a decorative metal panel to cover the fireplace or mantel opening and having provisions for venting into the fireplace chimney.

(c) *Gas Log.* An open-flame-type appliance consisting of a metal frame or base supporting simulated logs.

(d) *Radiant Appliance.* An open-front appliance designed primarily to convert the energy in fuel gas to radiant heat by means of refractory radiants or similar radiating materials. A radiant heater has no external jacket. A radiant appliance is designed for installation in a vented fireplace.

Decorative Appliance, Vented. A vented appliance whose only function lies in the aesthetic effect of the flames.

Deep Fat Fryer. (See *Food Service Equipment, Gas.*)

Design Pressure. The maximum operating pressure permitted by this Code, as determined by the design procedures applicable to the materials involved.

Dilution Air. Air that enters a draft hood or draft regulator and mixes with the flue gases.

Direct Gas-Fired Industrial Air Heater. A heater in which all of the products of combustion generated by the gas-burning device are released into the air stream being heated; whose purpose is to offset the building heat loss by heating incoming outside air, inside air or a combination of both.

Direct Gas-Fired Make-Up Air Heater. A heater in which all the products of combustion generated by the fuel-gas burning device are released into the outside air stream being heated.

Direct Vent Appliances. Appliances that are constructed and installed so that all air for combustion is derived directly from the outside atmosphere and all flue gases are discharged to the outside atmosphere.

Diversity Factor. Ratio of the maximum probable demand to the maximum possible demand.

Draft. The flow of gases or air through chimney, flue, or equipment, caused by pressure differences.

(a) *Mechanical or Induced.* The draft developed by fan or air or steam jet or other mechanical means.

(b) *Natural*. The draft developed by the difference in temperature of hot gases and outside atmosphere.

Draft Hood. A device built into an appliance, or made a part of the vent connector from an appliance, that is designed to (1) provide for the ready escape of the flue gases from the appliance in the event of no draft, backdraft, or stoppage beyond the draft hood, (2) prevent a backdraft from entering the appliance, and (3) neutralize the effect of stack action of the chimney or gas vent upon the operation of the appliance.

Draft Regulator. A device that functions to maintain a desired draft in the appliance by automatically reducing the draft to the desired value.

Drip. The container placed at a low point in a system of piping to collect condensate and from which it may be removed.

Dry Gas. A gas having a moisture and hydrocarbon dew point below any normal temperature to which the gas piping is exposed.

Duct Furnace. A furnace normally installed in distribution ducts of air conditioning systems to supply warm air for heating. This definition applies only to an appliance which depends for air circulation on a blower not furnished as part of the furnace.

Excess Air. Air that passes through the combustion chamber and the appliance flues in excess of that which is theoretically required for complete combustion.

Explosion Heads (Soft Heads or Rupture Discs). A protective device for relieving excessive pressure in a premix system by bursting of a rupturable disc.

Fireplace. A fire chamber and hearth constructed of noncombustible material for use with solid fuels and provided with a chimney.

(a) *Masonry Fireplace.* A hearth and fire chamber of solid masonry units such as bricks, stones, listed masonry units, or reinforced concrete, provided with a suitable chimney.

(b) *Factory-Built Fireplace.* A fireplace composed of listed factory-built components assembled in accordance with the terms of listing to form the completed fireplace.

Flame Arrester. A non-valve device for use in a gas-air mixture line containing a means for temporarily stopping the progress of a flame front (flashback).

Floor Furnace. A completely self-contained unit furnace suspended from the floor of the space being heated, taking air for combustion from outside this space.

(a) *Fan Type Floor Furnace.* A floor furnace equipped with a fan that provides the primary means for circulation of air.

(b) *Gravity Type Floor Furnace.* A floor furnace depending primarily upon circulation of air by gravity. This classification also includes floor furnaces equipped with booster-type fans that do not materially restrict free circulation of air by gravity flow when such fans are not in operation.

Flue, Appliance. The passage(s) within an appliance through which combustion products pass from the combustion chamber of the appliance to the draft hood inlet opening on an appliance equipped with a draft hood or to the outlet of the appliance on an appliance not equipped with a draft hood.

Flue, Chimney. The passage(s) in a chimney for conveying the flue or vent gases to the outside atmosphere.

Flue Collar. That portion of an appliance designed for the attachment of a draft hood, vent connector, or venting system.

Flue Gases. Products of combustion plus excess air in appliance flues or heat exchangers.

Food Service Equipment, Gas. Includes the following but is not limited to:

(a) *Counter Appliance.* An appliance such as a gas coffee brewer and coffee urn and any appurtenant water heating equipment, food and dish warmer, hot plate, and griddle.

(b) *Deep Fat Fryer.* An appliance, including a cooking vessel in which oils or fats are placed to such a depth that the cooking food is essentially supported by displacement of the cooking fluid or a perforated container immersed in the cooking fluid rather than by the bottom of the vessel, designed primarily for use in hotels, restaurants, clubs, and similar institutions.

(c) *Kettle, Gas-Fired.* An appliance with a cooking chamber that is heated either by a steam jacket in which steam is generated by gas heat or by direct gas heat applied to the cooking chamber.

(d) *Oven, Gas Baking and Roasting.* An oven primarily intended for volume food preparation that may be composed of one or more sections or units of the following types:

1. *Cabinet Oven.* An oven having one or more cavities heated by a single burner or group of burners

2. *Reel-Type Oven.* An oven employing trays that are moved by mechanical means

3. *Sectional Oven.* An oven composed of one or more independently heated cavities.

(e) *Range.* A self-contained gas range providing for cooking, roasting, baking, or broiling, or any combination of these functions, and not designed specifically for domestic use.

(f) *Steam Cooker.* A gas appliance that cooks, defrosts, or reconstitutes food by direct contact with steam.

(g) *Steam Generator.* A separate appliance primarily intended to supply steam for use with food service equipment.

Furnace, Central. A self-contained, gas-burning appliance for heating air by transfer of heat of combustion through metal to the air, and designed to supply heated air through ducts to spaces remote from or adjacent to the appliance location.

(a) *Forced Air Furnace.* A furnace equipped with a fan or blower that provides the primary means for circulation of air.

1. *Downflow Furnace.* A furnace designed with airflow discharge vertically downward at or near the bottom of the furnace.

2. *Horizontal Furnace.* A furnace designed for low headroom installation with airflow across the heating element essentially in a horizontal path.

3. *Upflow Furnace.* A furnace designed with airflow discharge vertically upward at or near the top of the furnace. This classification includes "highboy" furnaces with the blower mounted below the heating element and "lowboy" furnaces with the blower mounted beside the heating element.

(b) *Forced Air Furnace With Cooling Unit.* A single-package unit, consisting of a gas-fired forced air furnace of one of the types listed in (a) above combined with an electrically or gas-operated summer air conditioning system, contained in a common casing.

(c) *Gravity Furnace.* A furnace depending primarily on circulation of air by gravity.

(d) *Gravity Furnace With Booster Fan.* A furnace equipped with a booster fan that does not materially restrict free circulation of air by gravity flow when the fan is not in operation.

(e) *Gravity Furnace With Integral Fan.* A furnace equipped with a fan or blower as an integral part of its construction and operable on gravity systems only. The fan or blower is used only to overcome the internal furnace resistance to airflow.

Furnace, Direct Vent Central. A system consisting of (1) a central furnace for indoor installation, (2) combustion air connections between the central furnace and the outdoor atmosphere, (3) flue gas connections between the central furnace and the vent cap, and (4) vent cap for installation outdoors, supplied by the manufacturer and constructed so that all air for combustion is obtained from the outdoor atmosphere and all flue gases are discharged to the outdoor atmosphere.

Furnace, Enclosed. A specific heating, or heating and ventilating, furnace incorporating an integral total enclosure and using only outside air for combustion.

Garage, Repair. A building, structure, or portions thereof wherein major repair or painting or body and fender work is performed on motorized vehicles or automobiles, and includes associated floor space used for offices, parking, and showrooms.

Garage, Residential. A building or room in which not more than three self-propelled passenger vehicles are or may be stored, and that will not normally be used for other than minor service or repair operations on such stored vehicles.

Gas Main or Distribution Main. A pipe installed in a community to convey gas to individual services or other mains.

Gas-Mixing Machine. Any combination of automatic proportioning control devices, blowers, or compressors that supply mixtures of gas and air to multiple burner installations where control devices or other accessories are installed between the mixing device and burner.

Gas Utilization Equipment. Any device that utilizes gas as a fuel or raw material or both.

Gas Vent. A passageway composed of listed factory-built components assembled in accordance with the terms of listing for conveying vent gases from gas appliances or their vent connectors to the outside atmosphere.

(a) *Type B Gas Vent.* A vent for venting listed gas appliances with draft hoods and other Category I gas appliances listed for use with Type B gas vents.

(b) *Type B-W Gas Vent.* A vent for venting listed gas-fired vented wall furnaces.

(c) *Type L Vent.* A vent for venting appliances listed for use with Type L vents and appliances listed for use with Type B gas vents.

(d) *Special Gas Vent.* Gas vents for venting listed Category II, III, and IV gas appliances.

Gases. Include natural gas, manufactured gas, liquefied petroleum (LP) gas in the vapor phase only, liquefied petroleum gas-air mixtures, and mixtures of these gases, plus gas-air mixtures within the flammable range, with the fuel gas or the flammable component of a mixture being a commercially distributed product.

Governor, Zero. A regulating device that is normally adjusted to deliver gas at atmospheric pressure within its flow rating.

Gravity. (*See Specific Gravity.*)

Heating Value (Total). The number of British thermal units produced by the combustion, at constant pressure, of 1 cubic foot (0.03 m³) of gas when the products of combustion are cooled to the initial temperature of the gas and air, when the water vapor formed during combustion is condensed, and when all the necessary corrections have been applied.

Hoop Stress. The stress in a pipe wall, acting circumferentially in a plane perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the pipe and produced by the pressure of the fluid in the pipe.

Hot Plate. (*See Food Service Equipment, Gas, Counter Appliance.*)

Hot Plate, Domestic. A fuel-gas burning appliance consisting of one or more open-top type burners mounted on short legs or a base.

Hot Taps. Piping connections made to operating pipelines or mains or other facilities while they are in operation. The connection of the branch piping to the operating line and the tapping of the operating line are done while it is under gas pressure.

Household Cooking Gas Appliance. A gas appliance for domestic food preparation, providing at least one function of (1) top or surface cooking, (2) oven cooking, or (3) broiling.

(a) *Broiler.* A unit that cooks primarily by radiated heat.

(b) *Built-In Unit.* A unit designed to be recessed into, placed upon, or attached to the construction of a building, but not for installation on the floor.

(c) *Floor Mounted Unit.* A self-contained cooking appliance for installation directly on the floor. It has a top section and an oven section. It may have additional sections.

Incinerator, Domestic. A domestic, fuel-gas burning appliance, used to reduce refuse material to ashes, that is manufactured, sold, and installed as a complete unit.

Indirect Oven. An indirect oven is one in which the flue gases do not flow through the oven compartment.

Infrared Heater. A heater that directs a substantial amount of its energy output in the form of infrared energy into the area to be heated. Such heaters may be of either the vented or unvented type.

Insulating Millboard. A factory fabricated board formed with non-combustible materials, normally fibers, and having a thermal conductivity in the range of 1 Btu inch per square foot per °F per hour (0.14 watts per meter ° kelvin).

Joint. A connection between two lengths of pipe or between a length of pipe and a fitting.

(a) *Adhesive.* A joint made in plastic piping by the use of an adhesive substance that forms a continuous bond between the mating surfaces without dissolving either one of them.

(b) *Solvent Cement.* A joint made in thermoplastic piping by the use of a solvent or solvent cement that forms a continuous bond between the mating surfaces.

Kettle, Gas-Fired. *(See Food Service Equipment, Gas.)*

Labeled. Equipment or materials to which has been attached a label, symbol or other identifying mark of an organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction and concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of production of labeled equipment or materials and by whose labeling the manufacturer indicates compliance with appropriate standards or performance in a specified manner.

Laundry Stove, Domestic. A fuel-gas burning appliance consisting of one or more open-top type burners mounted on high legs or having a cabinet base.

Leak Check. An operation performed on a complete gas piping system and connected equipment prior to placing it into operation following initial installation and pressure testing or interruption of gas supply to verify that the system does not leak.

Leak Detector. An instrument for determining concentration of gas in air.

Limit Control. A device responsive to changes in pressure, temperature, or liquid level for turning on, shutting off, or throttling the gas supply to an appliance.

Listed. Equipment or materials included in a list published by an organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction and concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of production of listed equipment or materials and whose listing states either that the equipment or material meets appropriate standards or has been tested and found suitable for use in a specified manner.

Loads, Connected. Sum of the rated Btu input to individual gas utilization equipment connected to a piping system. May also be expressed in cubic feet per hour.

Main Burner. A device or group of devices essentially forming an integral unit for the final conveyance of gas or a mixture of gas and air to the combustion zone, and on which combustion takes place to accomplish the function for which the appliance is designed.

Manifold, Gas. The conduit of an appliance that supplies gas to the individual burners.

Maximum Working Pressure. The maximum pressure at which a piping system may be operated in accordance with the provisions of this Code. It is the pressure used in determining the setting of pressure relieving or pressure limiting devices installed to protect the system from accidental overpressuring.

Mechanical Exhaust System. Equipment installed in and made a part of the vent, which will provide a positive induced draft.

Meter. An instrument installed to measure the volume of gas delivered through it.

Mixing Blower. A motor-driven blower to produce gas-air mixtures for combustion through one or more gas burners or nozzles on a single-zone industrial heating appliance or on each control zone of a multizone industrial appliance or on each control zone of a multizone installation. The blower shall be equipped with a gas-control valve at its air entrance so arranged that gas is admitted to the airstream, entering the blower in proper proportions for correct combustion by the type of burners employed; the said gas-control valve being of either the zero governor or mechanical ratio valve type which controls the gas and air adjustment simultaneously. No valves or other obstructions shall be installed between the blower discharge and the burner or burners.

Noncombustible Material. For the purpose of this *Code*, noncombustible material shall mean material that is not capable of being ignited and burned, such as material consisting entirely of, or of a combination of, steel, iron, brick, tile, concrete, slate, asbestos, glass, and plaster.

Nondisplaceable Valve Member. A nondisplaceable valve member is one that cannot be moved from its seat by a force applied to the handle, or force applied by a plane surface to any exterior portion of the valve.

Valve Member. That part of a gas valve rotating within or in respect to the valve body that, by its position with respect to the valve body, controls the flow of gas.

Orifice. The opening in a cap, spud, or other device whereby the flow of gas is limited and through which the gas is discharged to the burner.

Orifice Cap (Hood). A movable fitting having an orifice that permits adjustment of the flow of gas by the changing of its position with respect to a fixed needle or other device.

Orifice Spud. A removable plug or cap containing an orifice that permits adjustment of the flow of gas either by substitution of a spud with a different sized orifice or by the motion of a needle with respect to it.

Outdoor Cooking Gas Appliance. As used in this *Code*, a post-mounted, fuel-gas burning outdoor cooking appliance for installation directly on and attachment to a post provided as a part of the appliance by the manufacturer.

Oven, Gas Baking and Roasting. (*See Food Service Equipment, Gas.*)

Parking Structure. A building, structure, or portion thereof used for the parking of motor vehicles.

(a) *Basement or Underground.* A parking structure or portion thereof located below grade.

(b) **Enclosed.** Having exterior enclosing walls that have less than 25 percent of the total wall area open to atmosphere at each level using at least two sides of the structure.

Pilot. A small flame that is utilized to ignite the gas at the main burner or burners.

Pipe, Equivalent Length. The resistance of valves, controls, and fittings to gas flow expressed as equivalent length of straight pipe for convenience in calculating pipe sizes.

Piping. As used in this *Code*, either pipe or tubing, or both.

(a) **Pipe.** Rigid conduit of iron, steel, copper, brass, aluminum, or plastic.

(b) **Tubing.** Semirigid conduit of copper, steel, aluminum, or plastic.

Piping System. All piping, valves, and fittings from the outlet of the point of delivery from the supplier to the outlets of the equipment shut-off valves.

Plenum. A compartment or chamber to which one or more ducts are connected and that forms part of the air distribution system.

Pool Heater. An appliance designed for heating nonpotable water stored at atmospheric pressure, such as water in swimming pools, therapeutic pools, and similar applications.

Pressure. Unless otherwise stated, is expressed in pounds per square inch above atmospheric pressure, i.e., gage pressure (psig).

Pressure Control. Manual or automatic maintenance of pressure, in all or part of a system, at a predetermined level, or within a selected range.

Pressure Drop. The loss in pressure due to friction or obstruction in pipes, valves, fittings, regulators, and burners.

Pressure Limiting Device. Equipment that under abnormal conditions will act to reduce, restrict, or shut off the supply of gas flowing into a system in order to prevent the gas pressure in that system from exceeding a predetermined value.

Pressure Test. An operation performed to verify the gas tight integrity of gas piping following its installation or modification.

Primary Air. The air introduced into a burner that mixes with the gas before it reaches the port or ports.

Purge. To free a gas conduit of air or gas, or a mixture of gas and air.

Quick-Disconnect Device. A hand operated device that provides a means for connecting and disconnecting an appliance or an appliance connector to a gas supply and that is equipped with an automatic means to shut off the gas supply when the device is disconnected.

Range. (See *Food Service Equipment, Gas.*)

Refrigerator (Using Gas Fuel). A fuel-gas burning appliance that is designed to extract heat from a suitable chamber.

Regulator, Gas Appliance. A pressure regulator for controlling pressure to the manifold of gas equipment. Types of gas appliance regulators are as follows:

(a) *Adjustable.*

1. *Spring Type, Limited Adjustment.* A regulator in which the regulating force acting upon the diaphragm is derived principally from a spring, the loading of which is adjustable over a range of not more than ± 15 percent of the outlet pressure at the midpoint of the adjustment range.

2. *Spring Type, Standard Adjustment.* A regulator in which the regulating force acting upon the diaphragm is derived principally from a spring, the loading of which is adjustable. The adjustment means shall be concealed.

(b) *Multistage.* A regulator for use with a single gas whose adjustment means can be positioned manually or automatically to two or more predetermined outlet pressure settings. Each of these settings may be either adjustable or nonadjustable. The regulator may modulate outlet pressures automatically between its maximum and minimum predetermined outlet pressure settings.

(c) *Nonadjustable.*

1. *Spring Type, Nonadjustable.* A regulator in which the regulating force acting upon the diaphragm is derived principally from a spring, the loading of which is not field adjustable.

2. *Weight Type.* A regulator in which the regulating force acting upon the diaphragm is derived from a weight or combination of weights.

Regulator, Line Gas. A pressure regulator placed in a gas line between the service regulator and the gas appliance regulator.

Regulator, LP-Gas, First Stage. On undiluted LP-Gas systems, the first pressure regulator reducing the storage container pressure.

Regulator, LP-Gas, Second Stage. A line gas pressure regulator for service on undiluted LP-Gas systems, reducing an intermediate high pressure to utilization pressure.

Regulator, Monitoring. A pressure regulator set in series with another pressure regulator for the purpose of automatically taking over in an emergency the control of the pressure downstream of the regulator in case that pressure tends to exceed a set maximum.

Regulator, Pressure. A device placed in a gas line for reducing, controlling, and maintaining the pressure in that portion of the piping system downstream of the device.

Regulator, Series. A pressure regulator in series with one or more other pressure regulators. The regulator nearest to the gas supply source is set to continuously limit the pressure on the inlet to the regulator downstream to some predetermined value (between the pressure of the gas supply source and the pressure of the system being controlled) that can be tolerated in the downstream system.

Regulator, Service. A pressure regulator installed by the serving gas supplier to reduce and limit the service line gas pressure to delivery pressure.

Regulator Vent. The opening in the atmospheric side of the regulator housing permitting the in and out movement of air to compensate for the movement of the regulator diaphragm.

Relief Opening. The opening provided in a draft hood to permit the ready escape to the atmosphere of the flue products from the draft hood in the event of no draft, backdraft, or stoppage beyond the draft hood, and to permit inspiration of air into the draft hood in the event of a strong chimney updraft.

Room Heater, Unvented. An unvented, self-contained, freestanding, nonrecessed [except as noted under (b) of the following classifications], fuel-gas burning appliance for furnishing warm air by gravity or fan circulation to the space in which installed, directly from the heater without duct connection. Unvented room heaters do not normally have input ratings in excess of 40,000 Btu per hour (11,720 watts).

(a) *Unvented Circulator.* A room heater designed to convert the energy in fuel gas to convected and radiant heat by direct mixing of air to be heated with the combustion products and excess air inside the jacket. Unvented circulators have an external jacket surrounding the burner and may be equipped with radiants with the jacket open in front of the radiants.

(b) *Wall Heater, Unvented Closed Front.* An unvented circulator having a closed front, for insertion in or attachment to a wall or partition. These heaters are marked "UNVENTED HEATER" and do not have normal input ratings in excess of 25,000 Btu per hour (7,325 watts).

Room Heater, Vented. A vented, self-contained, freestanding, nonrecessed, fuel-gas burning appliance for furnishing warm air to the space in which installed, directly from the heater without duct connections.

(a) *Vented Circulator.* A room heater designed to convert the energy in fuel gas to convected and radiant heat, by transfer of heat from flue gases to a heat exchanger surface, without mixing of flue gases with circulating heated air. Vented circulators may be equipped with transparent

panels and radiating surfaces to increase radiant heat transfer as long as separation of flue gases from circulating air is maintained. Vented circulators may also be equipped with an optional circulating air fan, but should perform satisfactorily with or without the fan in operation.

(b) *Vented Circulator, Fan Type.* A vented circulator equipped with an integral circulating air fan, the operation of which is necessary for satisfactory appliance performance.

(c) *Vented Overhead Heater.* A room heater designed for suspension from or attachment to or adjacent to the ceiling of the room being heated and transferring the energy of the fuel gas to the space being heated primarily by radiation downward from a hot surface, and in which there is no mixing of flue gases with the air of the space being heated.

Room Large in Comparison with Size of Equipment. Rooms having a volume equal to at least 12 times the total volume of a furnace or air conditioning appliance and at least 16 times the total volume of a boiler. Total volume of the appliance is determined from exterior dimensions and is to include fan compartments and burner vestibules, when used. When the actual ceiling height of a room is greater than 8 feet (2.4 m), the volume of the room is figured on the basis of a ceiling height of 8 feet (2.4 m).

Safety Blowout (Backfire Preventer). A protective device located in the discharge piping of large mixing machines, incorporating a bursting disc for excessive pressure release, means for stopping a flame front, and an electric switch or other release mechanism for actuating a built-in or separate safety shutoff. A check valve, signaling means, or both, may also be incorporated.

Safety Shutoff Device. A device that will shut off the gas supply to the controlled burner(s) in the event the source of ignition fails. This device may interrupt the flow of gas to main burner(s) only, or to pilot(s) and main burner(s) under its supervision.

Sauna Heater. A vented heater designed to raise the temperature of an occupied room to a temperature in excess of 100°F (37.8°C). The appliance may or may not include the means for altering the humidity within the room.

(a) *Direct Vent Sauna Heater.* A system consisting of an appliance, combustion air, and flue gas connections between the appliance and the outside atmosphere and a vent cap supplied by the manufacturer and constructed so that all air for combustion is obtained from the outside atmosphere. The appliance should be complete with grilles or equivalent, designed for incorporation in or permanent attachment to the structure of a building, and should furnish heated air circulated directly into the space to be heated through openings in the casing. Such appliances should not be provided with duct extensions.

(b) *Flue-Connected Sauna Heater.* An appliance designed for connection to a chimney or gas vent. All air for combustion and draft hood dilution is obtained from a room effectively sealed from the heated room but not from outside the structure containing the heated room.

Service Meter Assembly. The piping and fittings installed by the serving gas supplier to connect the inlet side of the meter to the gas service and to connect the outlet side of the meter to the customer's house or yard piping.

Service Regulator. (*See Regulator, Pressure and Regulator, Service.*)

Shall. Indicates a mandatory requirement.

Shutoff. (*See Valve.*)

Sources of Ignition. Devices or equipment that, because of their intended modes of use or operation, are capable of providing sufficient thermal energy to ignite flammable gas-air mixtures.

Space, Confined. For the purposes of this *Code*, a space whose volume is less than 50 cubic feet per 1,000 Btu per hour (4.8 m³ per kw) of the aggregate input rating of all appliances installed in that space.

Space, Unconfined. For purposes of this *Code*, a space whose volume is not less than 50 cubic feet per 1,000 Btu per hour (4.8 m³ per kw) of the aggregate input rating of all appliances installed in that space. Rooms communicating directly with the space in which the appliances are installed, through openings not furnished with doors, are considered a part of the unconfined space.

Specific Gravity. As applied to gas, the ratio of the weight of a given volume to that of the same volume of air, both measured under the same conditions.

Steam Cooker. (*See Food Service Equipment, Gas.*)

Steam Generator. (*See Food Service Equipment, Gas.*)

Stress. The resultant internal force that resists change in the size or shape of a body acted on by external forces. In this *Code*, "stress" is often used as being synonymous with unit stress, which is the stress per unit area (psi).

Tensile Strength. The highest unit tensile stress (referred to the original cross section) a material can sustain before failure (psi).

Thermostat.

(a) *Electric Switch Type.* A device that senses changes in temperature and controls electrically, by means of separate components, the flow of gas to the burner(s) to maintain selected temperatures.

(b) *Integral Gas Valve Type.* An automatic device, actuated by temperature changes, designed to control the gas supply to the burner(s) in order to maintain temperatures between predetermined limits, and in which the thermal actuating element is an integral part of the device.

1. *Graduating Thermostat.* A thermostat in which the motion of the valve is approximately in direct proportion to the effective motion of the thermal element induced by temperature change.

2. *Snap-Acting Thermostat.* A thermostat in which the thermostatic valve travels instantly from the closed to the open position, and vice versa.

Thread Joint Compounds. Nonhardening materials used on pipe threads to ensure a seal.

Type B Gas Vent. (*See Gas Vents.*)

Type B-W Gas Vent. (*See Gas Vents.*)

Type L Vent. (*See Gas Vents.*)

Unit Broiler. A broiler constructed as a separate appliance.

Unit Heater.

(a) *High-Static Pressure.* A self-contained, automatically controlled, vented, fuel-gas burning appliance having integral means for circulation of air against 0.2 inch (15 mm H₂O) or greater static pressure. It is equipped with provisions for attaching an outlet air duct and, when the appliance is for indoor installation remote from the space to be heated, is also equipped with provisions for attaching an inlet air duct.

(b) *Low-Static Pressure.* A self-contained, automatically controlled, vented, fuel-gas burning appliance, intended for installation in the space to be heated without the use of ducts, having integral means for circulation of air, normally by a propeller fan(s), and may be equipped with louvers or face extensions made in accordance with the manufacturers' specifications.

Unusually Tight Construction. Construction where:

(a) Walls and ceilings exposed to the outside atmosphere have a continuous water vapor retarder with a rating of 1 perm (6×10^{-11} kg per pa-sec-m²) or less with openings gasketed or sealed, and

(b) Weatherstripping has been added on openable windows and doors, and

(c) Caulking or sealants are applied to areas such as joints around window and door frames, between sole plates and floors, between wall-ceiling joints, between wall panels, at penetrations for plumbing, electrical, and gas lines, and at other openings.

Utility Gases. Natural gas, manufactured gas, liquefied petroleum gas-air mixtures, or mixtures of any of these gases.

Valve. A device used in piping to control the gas supply to any section of a system of piping or to an appliance.

(a) *Automatic.* An automatic or semiautomatic device consisting essentially of a valve and operator that control the gas supply to the burner(s) during operation of an appliance. The operator may be actuated by application of gas pressure on a flexible diaphragm, by electrical means, by mechanical means, or by other means.

(b) *Automatic Gas Shutoff.* A valve used in conjunction with an automatic gas shutoff device to shut off the gas supply to a fuel-gas burning water heating system. It may be constructed integrally with the gas shutoff device or be a separate assembly.

(c) *Equipment Shutoff.* A valve located in the piping system, used to shut off individual equipment.

(d) *Individual Main Burner.* A valve that controls the gas supply to an individual main burner.

(e) *Main Burner Control.* A valve that controls the gas supply to the main burner manifold.

(f) *Manual Main Gas-Control.* A manually operated valve in the gas line for the purpose of completely turning on or shutting off the gas supply to the appliance, except to pilot or pilots which are provided with independent shutoff.

(g) *Manual Reset.* An automatic shutoff valve installed in the gas supply piping and set to shut off when unsafe conditions occur. The device remains closed until manually reopened.

(h) *Relief.* A safety valve designed to forestall the development of a dangerous condition by relieving either pressure, temperature, or vacuum in a hot water supply system.

1. *Pressure.* A valve that automatically opens and closes a relief vent, depending on whether the pressure is above or below a predetermined value.

2. *Temperature.* A valve that automatically opens and automatically closes a relief vent, depending on whether the temperature is above or below a predetermined value.

3. *Vacuum.* A valve that automatically opens and closes a vent for relieving a vacuum within the hot water supply system, depending on whether the vacuum is above or below a predetermined value.

(i) *Service Shutoff.* A valve, installed by the serving gas supplier between the service meter or source of supply and the customer piping system, to shut off the entire piping system.

Vent. A passageway used to convey flue gases from gas utilization equipment, or their vent connectors, to the outside atmosphere.

Vent Connector. The pipe or duct which connects a fuel-gas burning appliance to a vent or chimney.

Vent Damper Device, Automatic. A device intended for installation in the venting system, in the outlet of or downstream of the appliance draft

hood, of an individual automatically operated fuel-gas burning appliance and which is designed to automatically open the venting system when the appliance is in operation and to automatically close off the venting system when the appliance is in a standby or shutdown condition.

(a) *Electrically Operated.* An automatic vent damper device that employs electrical energy to control the device.

(b) *Mechanically Actuated.* An automatic vent damper device dependent for operation upon the direct application or transmission of mechanical energy without employing any type of energy conversion.

(c) *Thermally Actuated.* An automatic vent damper device dependent for operation exclusively upon the direct conversion of the thermal energy of the vent gases into mechanical energy.

Vent Gases. Products of combustion from fuel-gas burning appliances plus excess air, plus dilution air in the venting system above the draft hood or draft regulator.

Vented Appliance Categories.

(a) *Category I.* An appliance which operates with a non-positive vent static pressure and with a vent gas temperature that avoids excessive condensate production in the vent.

(b) *Category II.* An appliance which operates with a nonpositive vent static pressure and with a vent gas temperature that may cause excessive condensate production in the vent.

(c) *Category III.* An appliance that operates with a positive vent static pressure and with a vent gas temperature that avoids excessive condensate production in the vent.

(d) *Category IV.* An appliance that operates with a positive vent static pressure and with a vent gas temperature that may cause excessive condensate production in the vent.

NOTE: For additional information on appliance categorization, see the appropriate Z21 and Z83 American National Standards.

Vented Wall Furnace. A self-contained, vented, fuel-gas burning appliance complete with grilles or equivalent, designed for incorporation in or permanent attachment to the structure of a building and furnishing heated air, circulated by gravity or by a fan, directly into the space to be heated through openings in the casing. Such appliances should not be provided with duct extensions beyond the vertical and horizontal limits of the casing proper, except that boots not to exceed 10 inches (25 cm) beyond the horizontal limits of the casing for extension through walls of nominal thickness are permitted. When such boots are provided, they shall be supplied by the manufacturer as an integral part of the appliance. This definition excludes floor furnaces, unit heaters, direct vent wall furnaces, and central furnaces.

(a) *Fan Type Vented Wall Furnace.* A wall furnace equipped with a fan.

(b) *Gravity Type Vented Wall Furnace.* A wall furnace depending on circulation of air by gravity.

Venting. Removal of combustion products as well as process fumes to the outer air.

Venting System. A continuous open passageway from the flue collar or draft hood of a gas-burning appliance to the outside atmosphere for the purpose of removing flue or vent gases.

NOTE: A venting system is usually composed of a vent or a chimney and vent connector(s), if used, assembled to form the open passageway.

(a) *Mechanical Draft Venting System.* A venting system designed to remove flue or vent gases by mechanical means, which may consist of an induced draft portion under nonpositive static pressure or a forced draft portion under positive static pressure.

1. *Forced Draft Venting System.* A portion of a venting system using a fan or other mechanical means to cause the removal of flue or vent gases under positive static vent pressure.

2. *Induced Draft Venting System.* A portion of a venting system using a fan or other mechanical means to cause the removal of flue or vent gases under non-positive static vent pressure.

3. *Power Venting System.* (See *Forced Draft Venting System.*)

(b) *Natural Draft Venting System.* A venting system designed to remove flue or vent gases under nonpositive static vent pressure entirely by natural draft. (See *Draft.*)

Wall Furnace, Direct Vent. A system consisting of an appliance, combustion air, and flue gas connections between the appliance and the outdoor atmosphere, and a vent cap supplied by the manufacturer and constructed so that all air for combustion is obtained from the outdoor atmosphere and all flue gases are discharged to the outdoor atmosphere. The appliance shall be complete with grilles or equivalent, designed for incorporation in or permanent attachment to the structure of a building, mobile home, or recreational vehicle, and shall furnish heated air circulated by gravity or by a fan directly into the space to be heated through openings in the casing. Such appliances shall not be provided with duct extensions beyond the vertical and horizontal limits of the appliance casing, except that boots not to exceed 10 inches (25 cm) beyond the horizontal limits of the casing for extension through walls or nominal thickness may be permitted. This definition excludes floor furnaces, unit heaters, vented wall furnaces, and central furnaces as defined in appropriate American National Standards.

Water Heater. An appliance for supplying hot water for domestic or commercial purposes.

(a) *Automatic Instantaneous Water Heater.* A water heater that has a rated input of at least 4,000 Btu per hour per gallon (5 kw per liter) of self-stored water. Automatic control is obtained by water-actuated control, thermostatic control, or combination of water-actuated control and thermostatic control. This classification includes faucet type water heaters designed to deliver water through a single faucet integral with or directly adjacent to the appliance.

(b) *Circulating Heaters.*

1. *Automatic Circulating Tank Water Heater.* A water heater that furnishes hot water to be stored in a separate vessel. Storage tank temperatures are controlled by means of a thermostat installed on the water heater. Circulation may be either gravity or forced.

2. *Nonautomatic Circulating Tank Water Heater.* A water heater that furnishes hot water to be stored in a separate vessel. Storage tank temperatures are controlled by means of a thermostat installed in the storage vessel.

(c) *Coil Circulation Water Heater.* A water heater whose heat transfer surface is composed primarily of water tubes less than 1½ inches (38 mm) in internal diameter and that requires circulation.

(d) *Commercial Storage Heater.* A water heater that heats and stores water at a thermostatically controlled temperature for delivery on demand. Input rating: 75,000 Btu per hour (21,980 watts) or more.

(e) *Counter Top Domestic Storage Heater.*

1. *Concealed Type.* A vented automatic storage heater that is designed for flush installation beneath a counter top 36 inches (91 cm) high, wherein the entire heater is concealed.

2. *Flush Type.* A vented automatic storage water heater with flat sides, top, front, and back, that is designed primarily for flush installation in conjunction with or adjacent to a counter 36 inches (91 cm) high, wherein the front and top of the heater casing are exposed.

3. *Recessed Type.* A vented automatic storage water heater with flat sides, top, front, and back, that is designed for flush installation beneath a counter 36 inches (91 cm) high, wherein the front of the heater casing is exposed.

(f) *Domestic Storage Heater.* A water heater that heats and stores water at a thermostatically controlled temperature for delivery on demand. Input rating may not exceed 75,000 Btu per hour (21,980 watts).

Part 2

Gas Piping System Design, Materials, and Components

2.1 Piping Plan.

2.1.1 Installation of Piping System. When required by the authority having jurisdiction, a piping sketch or plan shall be prepared before proceeding with the installation. This plan shall show the proposed location of piping, the size of different branches, the various load demands, and the location of the point of delivery.

2.1.2 Addition to Existing System. When connecting additional gas utilization equipment to a gas piping system, the existing piping shall be checked to determine if it has adequate capacity (*see 2.4.3*). If inadequate, the existing system shall be enlarged as required, or separate gas piping of adequate capacity shall be provided.

2.2 Provision for Location of Point of Delivery. The location of the point of delivery shall be acceptable to the serving gas supplier.

2.3 Interconnections Between Gas Piping Systems.

2.3.1 Interconnections Supplying Separate Users. Where two or more meters, or two or more service regulators where meters are not provided, are located on the same premises and supply separate users, the gas piping systems shall not be interconnected on the outlet side of the meters or service regulators.

2.3.2 Interconnections for Stand-By Fuels. Where a supplementary gas for stand-by use is connected downstream from a meter or a service regulator where a meter is not provided, a device to prevent backflow shall be installed. A three-way valve installed to admit the stand-by supply and at the same time shut off the regular supply shall be permitted to be used for this purpose.

2.4 Sizing of Gas Piping Systems.

2.4.1* General Considerations. Gas piping systems shall be of such size and so installed as to provide a supply of gas sufficient to meet the maximum demand without undue loss of pressure between the point of delivery and the gas utilization equipment.

2.4.2 Maximum Gas Demand. The volume of gas to be provided (in cubic feet per hour) shall be determined directly from the manufacturers'

input ratings of the gas utilization equipment served. Where input rating is not indicated, the gas supplier, equipment manufacturer, or a qualified agency shall be contacted for estimating the volume of gas to be supplied.

NOTE: To obtain the cubic feet per hour of gas required, divide the Btu per hour rating by the Btu per cubic foot heating value of the gas supplied. The heating value of the gas may be obtained from the local gas supplier.

The total connected hourly load shall be used as the basis for piping sizing since all equipment could be operating at full capacity simultaneously. If, however, a diversity of load can be established, smaller sized piping could be used.

NOTE: In case the ratings of the equipment to be installed are not known, Table C-1 in Appendix C shows the approximate demand of typical appliances by types.

2.4.3* Gas piping shall be sized in accordance with:

- (a) The tables in Part 10, or
- (b) Other approved engineering methods acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

2.4.4 Allowable Pressure Drop. The design pressure loss in any piping system under maximum probable flow conditions, from the point of delivery to the inlet connection of the gas utilization equipment, shall be such that the supply pressure at the equipment is greater than the minimum pressure required for proper equipment operation.

2.5 Piping System Operating Pressure Limitations.

2.5.1 Maximum Design Operating Pressure. The maximum design operating pressure for piping systems located inside buildings shall not exceed 5 psig (34 kPa gauge) unless approved by the authority having jurisdiction and one or more of the following conditions are met:

- (a)* The piping system is welded.
- (b) The piping is located in a ventilated chase or otherwise enclosed for protection against accidental gas accumulation.
- (c) The piping is located inside buildings or separate areas of buildings used exclusively for:
 - 1. Industrial processing or heating,
 - 2. Research,
 - 3. Warehousing, or
 - 4. Boiler or mechanical equipment rooms.
- (d) The piping is a temporary installation for buildings under construction.

2.5.2 Liquefied Petroleum Gas Systems. The maximum design operating pressure for undiluted LP-Gas systems shall not exceed 20 psig (140 kPa gauge).

Exception: Buildings, or separate areas of buildings, constructed in accordance with Chapter 7 of Standard for the Storage and Handling of Liquefied Petroleum Gases, ANSI/NFPA 58, and used exclusively to house industrial processes, research and experimental laboratories, or equipment or processing having similar hazards.

2.6 Acceptable Piping Materials and Joining Methods.

2.6.1 General.

(a) *Material Application.* Materials and components conforming to standards or specifications listed herein or acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to be used for appropriate applications, as prescribed and limited by this *Code*.

(b) *Used Materials.* Pipe, fittings, valves, or other materials shall not be used again unless they are free of foreign materials and have been ascertained to be adequate for the service intended.

(c) *Other Materials.* Material not covered by the standards specifications listed herein shall be investigated and tested to determine that it is safe and suitable for the proposed service, and, in addition, shall be recommended for that service by the manufacturer and shall be acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

2.6.2 Metallic Pipe.

(a) Cast-iron pipe shall not be used.

(b) Steel and wrought-iron pipe shall be at least of standard weight (Schedule 40) and shall comply with one of the following standards:

1. *Standard for Welded and Seamless Wrought-Steel Pipe*, ANSI/ASME B36.10;

2. *Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated Welded and Seamless*, ASTM A53; or

3. *Standard Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-Temperature Service*, ASTM A106.

(c) Nodular (ductile) iron pipe shall comply with one of the following standards:

1. *Standard for Ductile-Iron Pipe, Centrifugally Cast, in Metal Molds or Sand-Lined Molds, for Gas*, ANSI A21.52; or

2. *Specification for Ductile Iron Pressure Pipe*, ASTM A377.

Such pipe shall be not less than 3-inch size, shall not be welded, and shall be used only underground outside building foundation boundaries, or aboveground, provided that joints are properly restrained against movement and separation.

(d)* Copper and brass pipe shall not be used if the gas contains more than an average of 0.3 grains of hydrogen sulfide per 100 standard cubic feet of gas (0.7 milligrams per 100 liters).

Threaded copper, brass, or aluminum alloy pipe in iron pipe sizes shall be permitted to be used with gases not corrosive to such material.

(e) Aluminum alloy pipe shall comply with *Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Seamless Pipe and Seamless Extruded Tube*, ASTM B241 (except that the use of alloy 5456 is prohibited), and shall be marked at each end of each length indicating compliance. Aluminum alloy pipe shall be coated to protect against external corrosion where it is in contact with masonry, plaster, or insulation, or is subject to repeated wettings by such liquids as water, detergents, or sewage.

Aluminum alloy pipe shall not be used in exterior locations or underground.

2.6.3 Metallic Tubing. Seamless copper, aluminum alloy, or steel tubing shall be permitted to be used with gases not corrosive to such material.

(a) Steel tubing shall comply with *Standard Specification for Electric Resistance-Welded Coiled Steel Tubing for Gas and Fuel Oil Lines*, ASTM A539, or *Standard Specification for Copper Brazed Steel Tubing*, ASTM A254.

(b)* Copper tubing shall comply with standard Type K or L, of *Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube*, ASTM B88; or *Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service*, ASTM B280.

Copper and brass tubing and fittings (except tin-lined copper tubing) shall not be used if the gas contains more than an average of 0.3 grains of hydrogen sulfide per 100 standard cubic feet of gas (0.7 milligrams per 100 liters).

(c) Aluminum alloy tubing shall comply with *Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Drawn Seamless Tubes*, ASTM B210, or *Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Seamless Pipe and Seamless Extruded Tube*, ASTM B241. Aluminum-alloy tubing shall be coated to protect against external corrosion where it is in contact with masonry, plaster, or insulation, or is subject to repeated wettings by such liquids as water, detergent, or sewage.

Aluminum-alloy tubing shall not be used in exterior locations or underground.

(d) Corrugated stainless steel tubing shall be tested and listed in compliance with the construction, installation, and performance requirements of *Interior Fuel Gas Piping Systems Using Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing*, ANSI/AGA LC 1.

2.6.4 Plastic Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings. Plastic pipe, tubing, and fittings shall be used outside underground only and shall conform with *Standard Specification for Thermoplastic Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings*, ASTM D2513. Pipe to be used shall be marked "gas" and "ASTM D2513."

The use of plastic pipe, tubing and fittings in undiluted liquefied petroleum gas piping systems shall be in accordance with *Standard for the Storage and Handling of Liquefied Petroleum Gases*, ANSI/NFPA 58.

2.6.5 Workmanship and Defects. Gas pipe or tubing and fittings shall be clear and free from cutting burrs and defects in structure or threading, and shall be thoroughly brushed, and chip and scale blown.

Defects in pipe or tubing or fittings shall not be repaired. When defective pipe, tubing, or fittings are located in a system, the defective material shall be replaced. [See 4.1.1(c).]

2.6.6 Protective Coating. Where in contact with material or atmosphere exerting a corrosive action, metallic piping and fittings coated with a corrosion-resistant material shall be used.

External or internal coatings or linings used on piping or components shall not be considered as adding strength.

2.6.7 Metallic Pipe Threads.

(a) *Specifications for Pipe Threads.* Metallic pipe and fitting threads shall be taper pipe threads and shall comply with *Standard for Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)*, ANSI/ASME B1.20.1.

(b) *Damaged Threads.* Pipe with threads that are stripped, chipped, corroded, or otherwise damaged shall not be used. If a weld opens during the operation of cutting or threading, that portion of the pipe shall not be used.

(c) *Number of Threads.* Field threading of metallic pipe shall be in accordance with Table I.

(d) *Thread Compounds.* Thread (joint) compounds (pipe dope) shall be resistant to the action of liquefied petroleum gas or to any other chemical constituents of the gases to be conducted through the piping.

Table I
Specifications for Threading Metallic Pipe

Iron Pipe Size (Inches)	Approximate Length of Threaded Portion (Inches)	Approximate No. of Threads to be Cut
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	10
$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	10
1	$\frac{7}{8}$	10
$1\frac{1}{4}$	1	11
$1\frac{1}{2}$	1	11
2	1	11
$2\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	12
3	$1\frac{1}{2}$	12
4	$1\frac{5}{8}$	13

For SI units: 1 inch = 2.54 cm

2.6.8 Metallic Piping Joints and Fittings. The type of piping joint used shall be suitable for the pressure-temperature conditions and shall be selected giving consideration to joint tightness and mechanical strength under the service conditions. The joint shall be able to sustain the maximum end force due to the internal pressure and any additional forces due to temperature expansion or contraction, vibration, fatigue, or to the weight of the pipe and its contents.

(a)* *Pipe Joints.* Pipe joints shall be threaded, flanged, or welded, and nonferrous pipe shall be permitted to also be brazed with materials having a melting point in excess of 1,000°F (538°C). Brazing alloys shall not contain more than 0.05 percent phosphorus.

(b) *Tubing Joints.* Tubing joints shall either be made with approved gas tubing fittings or be brazed with a material having a melting point in excess of 1,000°F (538°C). Brazing alloys shall not contain more than 0.05 percent phosphorus.

(c) *Flared Joints.* Flared joints shall be used only in systems constructed from nonferrous pipe and tubing where experience or tests have demonstrated that the joint is suitable for the conditions and where provisions are made in the design to prevent separation of the joints.

(d) *Metallic Fittings (Including Valves, Strainers, Filters).*

1. Threaded fittings in sizes larger than 4 inches (100 mm) shall not be used unless acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

2. Fittings used with steel or wrought-iron pipe shall be steel, brass, bronze, malleable iron, ductile iron, or cast iron.

3. Fittings used with copper or brass pipe shall be copper, brass, or bronze.

4. Fittings used with aluminum alloy pipe shall be of aluminum alloy.

5. Cast-Iron Fittings

- Flanges shall be permitted to be used.
- Bushings shall not be used.
- Fittings shall not be used in systems containing flammable gas-air mixtures.
- Fittings in sizes 4 inches (100 mm) and larger shall not be used indoors unless approved by the authority having jurisdiction.
- Fittings in sizes 6 inches (15 cm) and larger shall not be used unless approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

6. *Brass, Bronze, or Copper Fittings.* Fittings, if exposed to soil, shall have a minimum 80 percent copper content.

7. *Aluminum Alloy Fittings.* Threads shall not form the joint seal.

8. *Zinc-Aluminum Alloy Fittings.* Fittings shall not be used in systems containing flammable gas-air mixtures.

9. *Special Fittings.* Fittings such as couplings, proprietary type joints, saddle tees, gland-type compression fittings, flared, flareless, or compression type tubing fittings may be used provided they are (1) used within the fitting manufacturers' pressure-temperature recommendations; (2) used within the service conditions anticipated with respect to vibration, fatigue, thermal expansion, or contraction; (3) installed or braced to prevent separation of the joint by gas pressure or external physical damage; and (4) acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

2.6.9 Plastic Piping, Joints, and Fittings. Plastic pipe, tubing, and fittings shall be joined in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions. The following shall be observed when making such joints:

(a) The joint shall be designed and installed so that the longitudinal pull-out resistance of the joint will be at least equal to the tensile strength of the plastic piping material.

(b) Heat-fusion joints shall be made in accordance with qualified procedures that have been established and proven by test to produce gas tight joints at least as strong as the pipe or tubing being joined. Joints shall be made with the joining method recommended by the pipe manufacturer. Heat fusion fittings shall be marked "ASTM D2513."

(c) Where compression type mechanical joints are used, the gasket material in the fitting shall be compatible with the plastic piping and with the gas distributed by the system. An internal tubular rigid stiffener shall be used in conjunction with the fitting. The stiffener shall be flush with the end of the pipe or tubing and shall extend at least to the outside end of the pipe or tubing and shall extend at least to the outside end of the compression fitting when installed. The stiffener shall be free of rough or sharp edges and shall not be a force fit in the plastic. Split tubular stiffeners shall not be used.

(d) Plastic piping joints and fittings for use in liquefied petroleum gas piping systems shall be in accordance with *Standard for the Storage and Handling of Liquefied Petroleum Gases*, ANSI/NFPA 58.

2.6.10 Flanges. All flanges shall comply with *Standard for Cast Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings*, ANSI/ASME B16.1; *Standard for Ring-Joint Gaskets and Grooves for Steel Pipe Flanges*, ANSI/ASME B16.20; *Rubber-Gasket Joints for Ductile-Iron Pressure Pipe and Fittings*, ANSI/AWWA C111/A21.11; or *Standard Finishes for Contact Faces of Pipe Flanges and Connecting-End Flanges of Valves and Fittings*, MSS SP-6. The pressure-temperature ratings shall equal or exceed that required by the application.

(a) *Flange Facings.* Standard facings shall be permitted for use under this *Code*. Where 150-pound steel flanges are bolted to Class 125 cast-iron flanges, the raised face on the steel flange shall be removed.

(b) *Lapped Flanges.* Lapped flanges shall be permitted to be used only aboveground or in exposed locations accessible for inspection.

2.6.11 Flange Gaskets. Material for gaskets shall be capable of withstanding the design temperature and pressure of the piping system, and the chemical constituents of the gas being conducted, without change to its chemical and physical properties. The effects of fire exposure to the joint shall be considered in choosing material.

(a) Acceptable materials include:

1. Metal or metal-jacketed asbestos (plain or corrugated),
2. Asbestos, and
3. Aluminum "O" rings and spiral wound metal gaskets.

(b) When a flanged joint is opened, the gasket shall be replaced.

(c) Full-face gaskets shall be used with all bronze and cast-iron flanges.

2.7 Gas Meters.

NOTE: This section applies to premises-owned meters [see 1.1.1(b)16].

2.7.1 Capacity. Gas meters shall be selected for the maximum expected pressure and permissible pressure drop.

2.7.2 Location.

(a) Gas meters shall be located in ventilated spaces readily accessible for examination, reading, replacement, or necessary maintenance.

(b) Gas meters shall not be placed where they will be subjected to damage, such as adjacent to a driveway, under a fire escape, in public passages, halls, coal bins, or where they will be subject to excessive corrosion or vibration.

(c) Gas meters shall be located at least 3 feet (0.9 m) from sources of ignition.

(d) Gas meters shall not be located where they will be subjected to extreme temperatures or sudden extreme changes in temperature. Meters shall not be located in areas where they are subjected to temperatures beyond those recommended by the manufacturer.

2.7.3 Supports. Gas meters shall be supported or connected to rigid piping so as not to exert a strain on the meters. Where flexible connectors are used to connect a gas meter to downstream piping at mobile homes in mobile home parks, the meter shall be supported by a post or bracket placed in a firm footing or other means providing equivalent support.

2.7.4 Meter Protection. Meters shall be protected against overpressure, back pressure, and vacuum, where such conditions are anticipated.

2.7.5 Identification. Gas piping at multiple meter installations shall be marked by a metal tag or other permanent means attached by the installing agency, designating the building or the part of the building being supplied.

2.8 Gas Pressure Regulators.

NOTE: This section applies to premises-owned regulators [see 1.1.1(b)16].

2.8.1 Where Required. A line gas pressure regulator or gas equipment pressure regulator, as applicable, shall be installed where the gas supply pressure is higher than that at which the branch supply line or gas utilization equipment is designed to operate or varies beyond design pressure limits.

2.8.2 Location. The gas pressure regulator location shall be such that the connections are readily accessible for servicing.

2.8.3 Regulator Protection. Pressure regulators shall be protected against physical damage.

2.8.4 Venting.

(a) *Line Gas Pressure Regulators, Including Second Stage LP-Gas Regulators.*

1. An independent vent to the outside of the building, sized in accordance with the regulator manufacturers' instructions, shall be provided where the location of a regulator is such that a ruptured diaphragm will cause a hazard. Where there is more than one regulator at a location, each regulator shall have a separate vent to the outside, or if approved by the authority having jurisdiction, the vent lines may be manifolded in accordance with accepted engineering practices to minimize back pressure in the event of diaphragm failure. See 2.9.7 for properly locating the vent.

Exception: A regulator and vent limiting means combination listed as complying with Standard for Gas Appliance Pressure Regulators, ANSI Z21.18, shall be permitted to be used without a vent to the outside, provided the regulator and vent limiting means are installed in a ventilated location.

2. The vent shall be designed to prevent the entry of water, insects, or other foreign materials that could cause blockage.

3. At locations where regulators might be submerged during floods, a special antiflood type breather vent fitting shall be installed, or the vent line shall be extended above the height of the expected flood waters.

4. A regulator shall not be vented to the gas equipment flue or exhaust system.

(b) *Gas Appliance Pressure Regulators.* For venting of gas appliance pressure regulators, see 5.1.18.

2.8.5 Bypass Piping. Valved and regulated bypasses shall be permitted to be placed around gas line pressure regulators where continuity of service is imperative.

2.8.6 Identification. Line pressure regulators at multiple regulator installations shall be marked by a metal tag or other permanent means designating the building or the part of the building being supplied.

2.8.7 Second Stage LP-Gas Regulators. Second stage regulators on undiluted liquefied petroleum gas piping systems shall comply with *Pressure Regulating Valves for LP-Gas*, ANSI/UL 144, and shall be installed in accordance with *Standard for Storage and Handling of Liquefied Petroleum Gases*, ANSI/NFPA 58.

2.9 Overpressure Protection Devices.

2.9.1 General. Overpressure protection devices shall be provided to prevent the pressure in the piping system from exceeding that value that would cause unsafe operation of any connected and properly adjusted gas utilization equipment. (See 2.9.5.)

(a) The requirements of this section shall be met and a piping system deemed to have overpressure protection where there are two devices (a service or line pressure regulator plus one other device), each limiting the pressure to a value that does not exceed the maximum working pressure of the downstream system, both of which must fail simultaneously in order to overpressure the downstream system. The pressure regulating, limiting, and relieving devices shall be properly maintained, and inspection procedures shall be devised or suitable instrumentation installed to detect failures or malfunctions of such devices, and replacements or repairs shall be promptly made.

(b) A pressure relieving or limiting device shall not be required where (1) the gas does not contain materials that could seriously interfere with the operation of the service or line pressure regulator; (2) the operating pressure of the gas source is 60 psig (414 kPa gauge) or less; and (3) the service or line pressure regulator has all of the following design features or characteristics.

1. Pipe connections to the service or line regulator do not exceed 2 inches nominal diameter.

2. It is self-contained with no external static or control piping.

3. It has a single port valve with an orifice diameter no greater than that recommended by the manufacturer for the maximum gas pressure at the regulator inlet.

4. The valve seat is made of resilient material designed to withstand abrasion of the gas, impurities in the gas, and cutting by the valve, and to resist permanent deformation where it is pressed against the valve port.

5. It is capable, under normal operating conditions, of regulating the downstream pressure within the necessary limits of accuracy and of limiting the discharge pressure under no-flow conditions to not more than 150 percent of the discharge pressure maintained under flow conditions.

2.9.2 Devices. Any of the following pressure relieving or pressure limiting devices shall be permitted to be used.

- (a) Spring loaded relief device

- (b) Pilot loaded back pressure regulator used as a relief valve so designed that failure of the pilot system or external control piping will cause the regulator relief valve to open

(c) A monitoring regulator installed in series with the service or line pressure regulator

(d) A series regulator installed upstream from the service or line regulator and set to continuously limit the pressure on the inlet of the service or line regulator to the maximum working pressure of the downstream piping system

(e) An automatic shutoff device installed in series with the service or line pressure regulator and set to shut off when the pressure on the downstream piping system reaches the maximum working pressure or some other predetermined pressure less than the maximum working pressure. This device shall be designed so that it will remain closed until manually reset.

(f) A liquid seal relief device that can be set to open accurately and consistently at the desired pressure.

The above devices may be installed as an integral part of the service or line pressure regulator or as separate units. If separate pressure relieving or pressure limiting devices are installed, they shall comply with 2.9.3 through 2.9.8.

2.9.3 Construction and Installation. All pressure relief or pressure limiting devices shall:

(a) Be constructed of materials so that the operation of the device will not be impaired by corrosion of external parts by the atmosphere or of internal parts by the gas.

(b) Be designed and installed so they can be operated to determine if the valve is free. The devices shall also be designed and installed so they can be tested to determine the pressure at which they will operate and examined for leakage when in the closed position.

2.9.4 External Control Piping. External control piping shall be protected from falling objects, excavations, or other causes of damage and shall be designed and installed so that damage to any control piping shall not render both the regulator and the overpressure protective device inoperative.

2.9.5 Setting. Each pressure limiting or pressure relieving device shall be set so that the pressure shall not exceed a safe level beyond the maximum allowable working pressure for the piping and appliances connected.

2.9.6 Unauthorized Operation. Precautions shall be taken to prevent unauthorized operation of any shutoff valve that will make a pressure relief valve or pressure limiting device inoperative. Acceptable methods for complying with this provision are:

(a) Lock the valve in the open position. Instruct authorized personnel of the importance of leaving the shutoff valve open and of being present while the shutoff valve is closed so that it can be locked in the open position before leaving the premises.

(b) Install duplicate relief valves, each having adequate capacity to protect the system, and arrange the isolating valves or three-way valve so that only one safety device can be rendered inoperative at a time.

2.9.7 Vents. The discharge stacks, vents, or outlet parts of all pressure relief and pressure limiting devices shall be located so that gas is safely discharged into the outside atmosphere. Discharge stacks or vents shall be designed to prevent the entry of water, insects, or other foreign material that could cause blockage. The discharge stack or vent line shall be at least the same size as the outlet of the pressure relieving device.

2.9.8 Size of Fittings, Pipe, and Openings. The openings, pipe, and fittings located between the system to be protected and the pressure relieving device shall be sized to prevent hammering of the valve and to prevent impairment of relief capacity.

2.10 Back Pressure Protection.

2.10.1 Where to Install. Protective devices shall be installed as close to the utilization equipment as practical where the design of utilization equipment connected is such that air, oxygen, or stand-by gases could be forced into the gas supply system. Gas and air combustion mixers incorporating double diaphragm “zero” or “atmosphere” governors or regulators shall require no further protection unless connected directly to compressed air or oxygen at pressures of 5 psig (34 kPa gauge) or more.

2.10.2 Protective Devices. Protective devices shall include but are not limited to the following:

- (a) Check valves
- (b) Three-way valves (of the type that completely closes one side before starting to open the other side)
- (c) Reverse flow indicators controlling positive shutoff valves
- (d) Normally closed air-actuated positive-shutoff pressure regulators.

2.11 Low Pressure Protection. A protective device shall be installed between the meter and the gas utilization equipment if the operation of the equipment is such (i.e., gas compressors) that it could produce a vacuum or a dangerous reduction in gas pressure at the meter. Such devices include, but are not limited to mechanical, diaphragm-operated, or electrically operated low-pressure shutoff valves.

2.12 Shutoff Valves. Shutoff valves shall be approved and shall be selected giving consideration to pressure drop, service involved, emergency use, and reliability of operation. Shutoff valves of size 1 inch NPT and smaller shall be listed.

2.13 Expansion and Flexibility.

2.13.1 Design. Piping systems shall be designed to have sufficient flexibility to prevent thermal expansion or contraction from causing excessive stresses in the piping material, excessive bending or loads at joints, or undesirable forces or moments at points of connections to equipment and at anchorage or guide points. Formal calculations or model tests shall be required only where reasonable doubt exists as to the adequate flexibility of the system.

Flexibility shall be provided by the use of bends, loops, offsets, or couplings of the slip type. Provision shall be made to absorb thermal changes by the use of expansion joints of the bellows type, or by the use of "ball" or "swivel" joints. Expansion joints of the slip type shall not be used inside buildings or for thermal expansion. If expansion joints are used, anchors or ties of sufficient strength and rigidity shall be installed to provide for end forces due to fluid pressure and other causes.

Pipe alignment guides shall be used with expansion joints according to the recommended practice of the joint manufacturer.

2.13.2 Special Local Conditions. Where local conditions include earthquake, tornado, unstable ground, or flood hazards, special consideration shall be given to increased strength and flexibility of piping supports and connections.

Part 3

Gas Piping Installation

3.1 Piping Underground.

3.1.1 Clearances. Underground gas piping shall be installed with sufficient clearance from any other underground structure to avoid contact therewith, to allow maintenance, and to protect against damage from proximity to other structures. In addition, underground plastic piping shall be installed with sufficient clearance, or shall be insulated from any source of heat so as to prevent the heat from impairing the serviceability of the pipe.

3.1.2 Protection Against Damage. Means shall be provided to prevent excessive stressing of the piping where there is heavy vehicular traffic, or soil conditions are unstable and settling of piping or foundation walls could occur. Piping shall be buried or covered in a manner so as to protect the piping from physical damage.

Piping shall be protected from physical damage where it passes through flower beds, shrub beds, and other such cultivated areas when such damage is reasonably expected.

(a) *Cover Requirements.* Underground piping systems shall be installed with at least 18 inches (46 cm) of cover. The cover shall be permitted to be reduced to 12 inches (30 cm) if external damage to the pipe is not likely to result. If a minimum of 12 inches (30 cm) of cover cannot be maintained, the pipe shall be installed in conduit or bridged (shielded).

(b) *Trenches.* The trench shall be graded so that the pipe has a firm, substantially continuous bearing on the bottom of the trench.

(c) *Backfilling.* Where flooding of the trench is done to consolidate the backfill, care shall be exercised to see that the pipe is not floated from its firm bearing on the trench bottom.

3.1.3 Protection Against Corrosion. Gas piping in contact with earth or other material that could corrode the piping shall be protected against corrosion in an approved manner. When dissimilar metals are joined underground, an insulating coupling or fitting shall be used. Piping shall not be laid in contact with cinders.

Uncoated threaded or socket welded joints shall not be used in piping in contact with soil or where internal or external crevice corrosion is known to occur.

NOTE: For information on corrosion protection of underground pipe, see *Control of External Corrosion on Underground or Submerged Metallic Piping Systems*, NACE RP 0169.

3.1.4 Protection Against Freezing. Where the formation of hydrates or ice is known to occur, piping shall be protected against freezing.

NOTE: The gas supplier may be consulted for recommendations.

3.1.5 Connection of Plastic Piping. Connections between metallic and plastic piping shall be made only outside, underground, and with *Standard Specification for Thermoplastic Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings*, ASTM D2513 Category 1 transition fittings.

3.1.6 Piping Through Foundation Wall. Underground piping, where installed below grade through the outer foundation or basement wall of a building, shall be encased in a protective pipe. The annular space between the gas piping and the sleeve shall be sealed at the foundation or basement wall to prevent entry of gas or water.

3.1.7 Piping Underground Beneath Buildings. Where the installation of gas piping underground beneath buildings is unavoidable, the piping shall be encased in an approved conduit designed to withstand the superimposed loads. The conduit shall extend into a normally usable and accessible portion of the building and, at the point where the conduit terminates in the building, the space between the conduit and the gas piping shall be sealed to prevent the possible entrance of any gas leakage. If the end sealing is of a type that will retain the full pressure of the pipe, the conduit shall be designed for the same pressure as the pipe. The conduit shall extend at least 4 inches (10 cm) outside the building, be vented above grade to the outside, and be installed so as to prevent the entrance of water and insects.

3.1.8 Plastic Pipe. An electrically continuous corrosion resistant tracer wire (min AWG 14) or tape shall be buried with the plastic pipe to facilitate locating. One end shall be brought above ground at a building wall or riser.

3.2 Aboveground Piping Outside. Piping installed aboveground shall be securely supported and located where it will be protected from physical damage (*also see 3.1.4*). Where passing through an outside wall, the piping shall also be protected against corrosion by coating or wrapping with an inert material. Where piping is encased in a protective pipe sleeve, the annular space between the gas piping and the sleeve shall be sealed at the wall to prevent the entry of water, insects, or rodents.

3.3 Piping in Buildings.

3.3.1 Building Structure.

(a) The installation of gas piping shall not cause structural stresses within building components to exceed allowable design limits.

(b) Before any beams or joists are cut or notched, permission shall be obtained from the authority having jurisdiction.

3.3.2 Other Than Dry Gas. Drips, sloping, protection from freezing, and branch pipe connections, as provided for in 3.1.4, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, and 3.9, shall be provided when other than dry gas is distributed and climatic conditions make such provisions necessary.

3.3.3 Gas Piping to be Sloped. Piping for other than dry gas conditions shall be sloped not less than $\frac{1}{4}$ inch in 15 feet (0.7 cm in 4.6 m) to prevent traps. Horizontal lines shall slope upward to risers and from the risers to the meter, or service regulator where a meter is not provided, or to the equipment.

3.3.4 Above-Ceiling Locations. Gas piping shall be permitted to be installed in accessible above-ceiling spaces, whether or not such spaces are used as a plenum. Valves shall not be located in such spaces.

3.3.5 Prohibited Locations. Gas piping inside any building shall not be installed in or through a circulating air duct, clothes chute, chimney or gas vent, ventilating duct, dumbwaiter, or elevator shaft. This provision shall not apply to ducts used to provide combustion and ventilation air in accordance with Section 5.3 or to above-ceiling spaces as covered in 3.3.4.

3.3.6 Hangers, Supports, and Anchors.

(a) Piping shall be supported with pipe hooks, metal pipe straps, bands, brackets, or hangers suitable for the size of piping, of adequate strength and quality, and located at intervals so as to prevent or damp out excessive vibration. Piping shall be anchored to prevent undue strains on connected equipment and shall not be supported by other piping. Pipe hangers and supports shall conform to the requirements of *Pipe Hangers and Supports—Materials, Design and Manufacturer*, ANSI/MSS SP-58.

(b) Spacings of supports in gas piping installations shall not be greater than shown in Table II.

(c) Supports, hangers, and anchors shall be installed so as not to interfere with the free expansion and contraction of the piping between

anchors. All parts of the supporting equipment shall be designed and installed so they will not be disengaged by movement of the supported piping.

3.3.7 Removal of Pipe. If piping containing gas is to be removed, the line shall be first disconnected from all sources of gas and then thoroughly purged with air, water, or inert gas before any cutting or welding is done. (See Section 4.3.)

Table II
Support of Piping

Steel Pipe, Nominal Size of Pipe (Inches)	Spacing of Supports (Feet)	Nominal Size of Tubing (Inch O.D.)	Spacing of Supports (Feet)
$\frac{1}{2}$	6	$\frac{1}{2}$	4
$\frac{3}{4}$ or 1	8	$\frac{5}{8}$ or $\frac{3}{4}$	6
$1\frac{1}{4}$ or larger (horizontal)	10	$\frac{7}{8}$ or 1	8
$1\frac{1}{4}$ or larger (vertical)	every floor level		

For SI units: 1 foot = 0.305 m

3.4 Concealed Piping in Buildings.

3.4.1 General. Gas piping shall be permitted to be installed in concealed locations in accordance with this section.

3.4.2 Connections in Original Installations. When installing gas piping that is to be concealed, unions, tubing fittings, running threads, right and left couplings, bushings, swing joints, and compression couplings made by combinations of fittings shall not be used.

Exception No. 1: Joining tubing by brazing [see 2.6.8(b)] shall be permitted.

Exception No. 2: Fittings listed for use in concealed spaces that have been demonstrated to sustain, without leakage, any forces due to temperature expansion or contraction, vibration or fatigue based on their geographic location, application, or operation shall be permitted to be used.

3.4.3 Piping in Partitions. Concealed gas piping shall not be located in solid partitions.

3.4.4 Tubing in Partitions. This provision shall not apply to tubing that pierces walls, floors, or partitions.

Tubing shall be permitted to be installed vertically and horizontally inside hollow walls or partitions without protection along its entire concealed length provided:

(a) A steel striker barrier not less than 0.0508 inch (1.3 mm) thick, or equivalent, is installed between the tubing and the finished wall and extends at least 4 inches (10 cm) beyond concealed penetrations of plates, fire stops, wall studs, etc., and

(b) The tubing is installed in single runs and is not rigidly secured.

3.4.5 Piping in Floors. Gas piping in solid floors such as concrete shall be laid in channels in the floor and covered to permit access to the piping with a minimum of damage to the building. Where piping in floor channels could be exposed to excessive moisture or corrosive substances, the piping shall be protected in an approved manner.

Exception: In other than industrial occupancies and where approved by the authority having jurisdiction, gas piping shall be permitted to be embedded in concrete floor slabs constructed with portland cement. Piping shall be surrounded with a minimum of 1½ inches (3.8 cm) of concrete and shall not be in physical contact with other metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. All piping, fittings, and risers shall be protected against corrosion in accordance with 2.6.6. Piping shall not be embedded in concrete slabs containing quickset additives or cinder aggregate.

3.4.6 Reconnections. Where necessary to insert fittings in gas pipe that has been installed in a concealed location, the pipe shall be permitted to be reconnected by welding, flanges, or the use of a ground joint union with the nut center-punched to prevent loosening by vibration. Reconnection of tubing in a concealed location shall be prohibited.

Exception No. 1: Joining tubing by brazing [see 2.6.8(b)] shall be permitted.

Exception No. 2: Fittings listed for use in concealed spaces that have been demonstrated to sustain, without leakage, any forces due to temperature expansion or contraction, vibration or fatigue based on their geographic location, application, or operation shall be permitted to be used.

3.5 Piping in Vertical Chases.

3.5.1 Pressure Reduction. If pressure reduction is required in branch connections for compliance with 2.5.1, such reduction shall take place

either inside the chase or immediately adjacent to the outside wall of the chase. Regulator venting and downstream overpressure protection shall comply with 2.8.4 and Section 2.9. The regulator shall be accessible for service and repair.

(a) Regulators equipped with a vent limiting means shall be permitted to be vented into the chase.

(b) Regulators not equipped with a vent limiting means shall be permitted to be vented either directly to the outdoors or to a point within the top one foot of the chase.

Exception: If the fuel gas is heavier than air, the vent shall be vented only directly to the outdoors.

3.5.2 Construction. Chase construction shall comply with local building codes with respect to fire resistance and protection of horizontal and vertical openings.

3.5.3 Ventilation. A chase shall be ventilated to the outdoors and only at the top. The opening(s) shall have a minimum free area (in square inches) equal to the product of one-half of the maximum pressure in the piping (in psig) times the largest nominal diameter of that piping (in inches), or the cross-sectional area of the chase, whichever is smaller. Where more than one fuel gas piping system is present, the free area for each system shall be calculated and the largest area used.

NOTE: Only vertical chases are recognized by the coverage. It is believed that welded joints for a horizontal gas line would be preferable to a horizontal chase.

3.6 Gas Pipe Turns. Changes in direction of gas pipe shall be permitted to be made by the use of fittings, factory bends, or field bends.

3.6.1 Metallic Pipe.

(a) Bends shall be made only with bending equipment and procedures especially intended for that purpose.

(b) All bends shall be smooth and free from buckling, cracks, or other evidence of mechanical damage.

(c) The longitudinal weld of the pipe shall be near the neutral axis of the bend.

(d) Pipe shall not be bent through an arc of more than 90 degrees.

(e) The inside radius of a bend shall be not less than 6 times the outside diameter of the pipe.

3.6.2 Plastic Pipe.

(a) Plastic pipe shall be permitted to be bent provided that the pipe is not damaged and the internal diameter of the pipe is not effectively reduced.

(b) Joints shall not be located in pipe bends.

(c) The radius of the inner curve of such bends shall not be less than 25 times the inside diameter of the pipe.

(d) Where the piping manufacturer specifies the use of special bending equipment or procedures, such equipment or procedures shall be used.

3.6.3* Mitered Bends. Mitered bends are permitted subject to the following limitations:

(a) Miters shall not be used in systems having a design pressure greater than 50 psig (340 kPa gauge). Deflections caused by misalignments up to 3 degrees shall not be considered as miters.

(b) The total deflection angle at each miter shall not exceed 90 degrees.

3.6.4 Elbows. Factory made welding elbows or transverse segments cut therefrom shall be permitted to be used for changes in direction, provided that the arc length measured along the crotch is at least 1 inch (2.5 cm) in pipe sizes 2 inches and larger.

3.7 Drips and Sediment Traps.

3.7.1 Provide Drips Where Necessary. A drip shall be provided at any point in the line of pipe where condensate could collect. Where required by the authority having jurisdiction or the serving gas supplier, a drip shall also be provided at the outlet of the meter. This drip shall be so installed as to constitute a trap wherein an accumulation of condensate will shut off the flow of gas before it will run back into the meter.

3.7.2 Location of Drips. All drips shall be installed only in such location that they will be readily accessible to permit cleaning or emptying. A drip shall not be located where the condensate is likely to freeze.

3.7.3 Sediment Traps. (See 5.5.7.)

3.8 Outlets.

3.8.1 Location and Installation.

(a) The outlet fittings or piping shall be securely fastened in place.

(b) Outlets shall not be located behind doors.

(c) Outlets shall be located far enough from floors, walls, patios, slabs, and ceilings to permit the use of wrenches without straining, bending, or damaging the piping.

(d) The unthreaded portion of gas piping outlets shall extend not less than 1 inch (2.5 cm) through finished ceilings or indoor or outdoor walls.

(e) The unthreaded portion of gas piping outlets shall extend not less than 2 inches (5 cm) above the surface of floors or outdoor patios or slabs.

(f) The provisions of 3.8.1(d) and (e) shall not apply to listed quick-disconnect devices of the flush-mounted type or listed gas convenience outlets. Such devices shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturers' installation instructions.

3.8.2 Cap All Outlets.

(a) Each outlet, including a valve or cock outlet, shall be closed gas tight with a threaded plug or cap immediately after installation and shall be left closed until the gas utilization equipment is connected thereto. When equipment is disconnected from an outlet and the outlet is not to be used again immediately, it shall be closed gas tight.

Outlets shall not be closed with tin caps, wooden plugs, corks, or by other improvised methods.

Exception No. 1: Laboratory equipment installed in accordance with 5.5.2(a).

Exception No. 2: The use of a listed quick-disconnect device with integral shutoff or listed gas convenience outlet shall be permitted.

(b) Equipment shutoff valves installed in fireplaces shall be removed, and the piping capped gas tight, where the fireplace is used for solid fuel burning.

3.9 Branch Pipe Connection. When a branch outlet is placed on a main supply line before it is known what size pipe will be connected to it, the outlet shall be of the same size as the line which supplies it.

3.10 Manual Gas Shutoff Valves. (Also see 5.5.4.)

3.10.1 Valves at Regulators. An accessible gas shutoff valve shall be provided upstream of each gas pressure regulator. Where two gas pressure regulators are installed in series in a single gas line, a manual valve shall not be required at the second regulator.

3.10.2 Valves Controlling Multiple Systems.

(a) *Accessibility of Gas Valves.* Main gas shutoff valves controlling several gas piping systems shall be readily accessible for operation and installed so as to be protected from physical damage. They shall be marked with a metal tag or other permanent means attached by the installing agency so that the gas piping systems supplied through them can be readily identified.

(b) *Shutoff Valves for Multiple House Lines.* In multiple tenant buildings supplied through a master meter, or through one service regulator where a meter is not provided, or where meters or service regulators are not readily accessible from the equipment location, an individual shutoff valve for each apartment or tenant line shall be provided at a convenient point of general accessibility.

In a common system serving a number of individual buildings, shutoff valves shall be installed at each building.

3.10.3 Emergency Shutoff Valves. An exterior shutoff valve to permit turning off the gas supply to each building in an emergency shall be provided. The emergency shutoff valves shall be plainly marked as such and their locations posted as required by the authority having jurisdiction.

3.11 Prohibited Devices. No device shall be placed inside the gas piping or fittings that will reduce the cross-sectional area or otherwise obstruct the free flow of gas, except where proper allowance in the piping system design has been made for such a device and where approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

3.12 Systems Containing Gas-Air Mixtures Outside the Flammable Range. Where gas-air mixing machines are employed to produce mixtures above or below the flammable range, they shall be provided with stops to prevent adjustment of the mixture to within or approaching the flammable range.

3.13 Systems Containing Flammable Gas-Air Mixtures.

3.13.1 Required Components. A central premix system with a flammable mixture in the blower or compressor shall consist of the following components:

(a) Gas-mixing machine in the form of an automatic gas-air proportioning device combined with a downstream blower or compressor

(b) Flammable mixture piping, minimum Schedule 40 NPS

(c) Automatic firecheck(s)

(d) Safety blowout(s) or backfire preventers for systems utilizing flammable mixture lines above 2½ inches nominal pipe size or the equivalent.

3.13.2 Optional Components. The following components shall also be permitted to be utilized in any type central premix system:

(a) Flowmeter(s)

(b) Flame arrester(s).

3.13.3 Additional Requirements. Gas-mixing machines shall have non-sparking blowers and shall be so constructed that a flashback will not rupture machine casings.

3.13.4 Special Requirements for Mixing Blowers. A mixing blower system shall be limited to applications with minimum practical lengths of mixture piping, limited to a maximum mixture pressure of 10 inches water column (25 Pa), and limited to gases containing no more than 10 percent hydrogen.

The blower shall be equipped with a gas-control valve at its air entrance so arranged that gas is admitted to the airstream, entering the blower in proper proportions for correct combustion by the type of burners employed, the said gas-control valve being of either the zero governor or mechanical ratio valve type that controls the gas and air adjustment simultaneously. No valves or other obstructions shall be installed between the blower discharge and the burner or burners.

NOTE: The mixing blower is acknowledged as a special case because of its inability to tolerate control valves or comparable restrictions between mixing blower and burner(s). With these limitations, mixing blower installations are not required to utilize safety blowouts, backfire preventers, explosion heads, flame arresters, or automatic firechecks that introduce pressure losses.

3.13.5 Installation of Gas-Mixing Machines.

(a) The machine shall be located in a large, well-ventilated area or in a small detached building or cut-off room provided with room construction and explosion vents in accordance with sound engineering principles. Such rooms or below-grade installations shall have adequate positive ventilation.

NOTE: For information on venting of deflagrations, see *Guide for Venting of Deflagrations*, ANSI/NFPA 68.

(b) Where gas-mixing machines are installed in well-ventilated areas, the type of electrical equipment shall be in accordance with the *National Electrical Code*®, ANSI/NFPA 70, for general service conditions unless other hazards in the area prevail.

Where gas-mixing machines are installed in small detached buildings or cut-off rooms, the electrical equipment and wiring shall be installed in accordance with the *National Electrical Code*, ANSI/NFPA 70, for hazardous locations (Articles 500 and 501, Class I, Division 2).

(c) Air intakes for gas-mixing machines using compressors or blowers shall be taken from outdoors whenever practical.

(d) Controls for gas-mixing machines shall include interlocks and a safety shutoff valve of the manual reset type in the gas supply connection to each machine arranged to automatically shut off the gas supply in the event of high or low gas pressure. Except for open burner installations only, this shall be interlocked so that the blower or compressor will stop operating following a gas supply failure. Where a system employs pressurized air, means shall be provided to shut off the gas supply in the event of air failure.

NOTE: Additional interlocks may be necessary for safe operation of equipment supplied by the gas-mixing machine.

(e) Centrifugal gas-mixing machines in parallel shall be reviewed by the user and equipment manufacturer before installation, and means or plans for minimizing these effects of downstream pulsation and equipment overload shall be prepared and utilized as needed.

3.13.6 Use of Automatic Firechecks, Safety Blowouts, or Backfire Preventers. Automatic firechecks and safety blowouts or backfire preventers shall be provided in piping systems distributing flammable air-gas mixtures from gas-mixing machines to protect the piping and the machines in event of flashback, in accordance with the following recommendations:

(a) Approved automatic firechecks shall be installed upstream as close as practicable to the burner inlets following the firecheck manufacturers' instructions.

NOTE 1: Two basic methods are generally used. One calls for a separate firecheck at each burner, the other a firecheck at each group of burners. The second method is generally more practical if a system consists of many closely spaced burners.

NOTE 2: An approved automatic firecheck shall be installed as near as practicable upstream from a flame arrester used for local protection where test burners or lighting torches are employed.

(b) A separate manually operated gas valve shall be provided at each automatic firecheck for shutting off the flow of gas-air mixture through the firecheck after a flashback has occurred. The valve shall be located upstream as close as practical to the inlet of the automatic firecheck.

CAUTION: These valves must not be reopened after a flashback has occurred until the firecheck has cooled sufficiently to prevent reignition of the flammable mixture and has been properly reset.

(c) A safety blowout or backfiring preventer shall be provided in the mixture line near the outlet of each gas-mixing machine where the size of the piping is larger than 2½ inches NPS, or equivalent, to protect the mixing equipment in the event of an explosion passing through an automatic firecheck. The manufacturers' instructions shall be followed when installing these devices, particularly after a disc has burst.

The discharge from the safety blowout or backfire preventer shall be located or shielded so that particles from the ruptured disc cannot be directed toward personnel. Whenever there are interconnected installations of gas-mixing machines with safety blowouts or backfire preventers, provision shall be made to keep the mixture from other machines from reaching any ruptured disc opening. Check valves shall not be used for this purpose.

(d) Explosion heads (rupture disc) shall be permitted to be provided in large capacity premix systems to relieve excessive pressure in pipelines. They shall be located at and vented to a safe outdoor location. Provisions shall be provided for automatically shutting off the supply of gas-air mixture in the event of rupture.

3.14 Electrical Bonding and Grounding.

(a) Each aboveground portion of a gas piping system upstream from the equipment shutoff valve shall be electrically continuous and bonded to any grounding electrode, as defined by the *National Electrical Code*, ANSI/NFPA 70.

(b) Gas piping shall not be used as a grounding electrode.

3.15 Electrical Circuits. Electrical circuits shall not utilize gas piping or components as conductors.

Exception: Low-voltage (50 volts or less) control circuits, ignition circuits, and electronic flame detection device circuits shall be permitted to make use of piping or components for a part of an electric circuit.

3.16 Electrical Connections.

(a) All electrical connections between wiring and electrically operated control devices in a piping system shall conform to the requirements of the *National Electrical Code*, ANSI/NFPA 70. (See Section 3.14.)

(b) Any essential safety control depending upon electric current as the operating medium shall be of a type that will shut off (fail safe) the flow of gas in the event of current failure.

Part 4

Inspection, Testing, and Purging

4.1 Pressure Testing and Inspection.

4.1.1 General.

(a) Prior to acceptance and initial operation, all piping installations shall be inspected and tested to determine that the materials, design, fabrication, and installation practices comply with the requirements of this Code.

(b) Inspection shall consist of visual examination, during or after manufacture, fabrication, assembly, or pressure tests as appropriate. Supplementary types of nondestructive inspection techniques, such as magnetic-particle, radiographic, ultrasonic, etc., shall not be required unless specifically listed herein or in the engineering design.

(c) In the event repairs or additions are made following the pressure test, the affected piping shall be tested, except that, in the case of minor repairs or additions, testing shall be permitted to be omitted where precautionary measures are taken to ensure sound construction.

(d) Because it is sometimes necessary to divide a piping system into test sections and install test heads, connecting piping, and other necessary appurtenances for testing, it is not required that the tie-in sections of pipe be pressure tested. Tie-in connections, however, shall be tested with soap solution after gas has been introduced and the pressure has been increased sufficiently to give some indications should leaks exist. [See caution following 4.1.5(b).]

(e) The test procedure used shall be capable of disclosing all leaks in the section being tested and shall be selected after giving due consideration to the volumetric content of the section and to its location.

(f) A piping system shall be permitted to be tested as a complete unit or in sections. Under no circumstances shall a valve in a line be used as a bulkhead between gas in one section of the piping system and test medium in an adjacent section, unless two valves are installed in series with a valved "tell-tale" located between these valves. A valve shall not be subjected to the test pressure unless it can be determined that the valve, including the valve closing mechanism, is designed to safely withstand the test pressure.

(g) Regulator and valve assemblies fabricated independently of the piping system in which they are to be installed shall be permitted to be tested with inert gas at the time of fabrication.

4.1.2 Test Medium. The test medium shall be air, nitrogen, or carbon dioxide. OXYGEN SHALL NEVER BE USED.

Exception: Fuel gas shall be permitted to be used in piping systems operating at pressures of 0.5 psig (3.4 kPa gauge).

4.1.3 Test Preparation.

(a) Pipe joints, including welds, shall be left exposed for examination during the test. If the pipe end joints have been previously tested in accordance with this *Code*, they shall be permitted to be covered or concealed.

(b) Expansion joints shall be provided with temporary restraints, if required, for the additional thrust load under test.

(c) Equipment that is not to be included in the test shall be either disconnected from the piping or isolated by blanks, blind flanges, or caps. Flanged joints at which blinds are inserted to blank off other equipment during the test shall not be required to be tested.

(d) Where the piping system is connected to equipment or components designed for operating pressures of less than the test pressure, such equipment or equipment components shall be isolated from the piping system by disconnecting them and capping the outlet(s).

(e) Where the piping system is connected to equipment or components designed for operating pressures equal to or greater than the test pressure, such equipment shall be isolated from the piping system by closing the individual equipment shutoff valve(s).

(f) All testing of piping systems shall be done with due regard for the safety of employees and the public during the test. Bulkheads, anchorage, and bracing suitably designed to resist test pressures shall be installed if necessary. Prior to testing, the interior of the pipe shall be cleared of all foreign material.

4.1.4 Test Pressure.

(a) Test pressure shall be measured with a manometer or with a pressure measuring device designed and calibrated to read, record, or indicate a pressure loss due to leakage during the pressure test period. The source of pressure shall be isolated before the pressure tests are made.

(b) The test pressure to be used shall be no less than $1\frac{1}{2}$ times the proposed maximum working pressure, but not less than 3 psig (20 kPa gauge), irrespective of design pressure. Where the test pressure exceeds 125 psig (862 kPa gauge), the test pressure shall not exceed a value that produces a hoop stress in the piping greater than 50 percent of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe.

(c) Systems for undiluted liquefied petroleum gases shall withstand the pressure test in accordance with (b) above, or, for single-stage systems operating at a pressure of $\frac{1}{2}$ psig (3.5 kPa gauge) or less, shall withstand a test pressure of $9.0 \pm \frac{1}{2}$ inch (22 ± 1.2 kPa) water column

for a period of not less than 10 minutes without showing any drop in pressure. If the source of pressure for this test is a liquefied petroleum gas container, the container service valve shall be checked for positive shutoff with leak detector solution prior to the test, or shall be disconnected from the system during the pressure test. [See 4.1.3(e).]

(d) Test duration shall be not less than $\frac{1}{2}$ hour for each 500 cubic feet (14 m^3) of pipe volume or fraction thereof. When testing a system having a volume less than 10 cubic feet (0.28 m^3) or a system in a single-family dwelling, the test duration shall be permitted to be reduced to 10 minutes. For piping systems having a volume of more than 24,000 cubic feet (680 m^3), the duration of the test shall not be required to exceed 24 hours.

4.1.5 Detection of Leaks and Defects.

(a) The piping system shall withstand the test pressure specified without showing any evidence of leakage or other defects. Any reduction of test pressures as indicated by pressure gages shall be deemed to indicate the presence of a leak unless such reduction can be readily attributed to some other cause.

(b) The leakage shall be located by means of an approved combustible gas detector, soap and water, or an equivalent nonflammable solution. **Matches, candles, open flames, or other methods that could provide a source of ignition shall not be used.**

CAUTION: Since some leak test solutions, including soap and water, may cause corrosion or stress cracking, the piping shall be rinsed with water after testing, unless it has been determined the leak test solution is noncorrosive.

Where leakage or other defects are located, the affected portion of the piping system shall be repaired or replaced and retested. [See 4.1.1(c).]

4.1.6 Test Records. Records shall be made of inspection and all tests performed. These records shall indicate which portions of the piping system conform to this *Code* or were pressure tested.

4.2 System and Equipment Leakage Test.

4.2.1 Before Turning Gas On. Before gas is introduced into a system of new gas piping, or back into an existing system after being shut off, the entire system shall be inspected to determine that there are no open fittings or ends and that all manual valves at outlets on equipment are closed and all unused valves at outlets are closed and plugged or capped.

4.2.2* Test for Leakage. Immediately after turning on the gas, the piping system shall be tested to ascertain that no gas is escaping.

If leakage is indicated, the gas supply shall be shut off until the necessary repairs have been made.

4.2.3 Placing Equipment in Operation. Gas utilization equipment shall be permitted to be placed in operation after the piping system has been tested and determined to be free of leakage and purged in accordance with 4.3.2.

4.3* Purging.

4.3.1 Removal from Service. When gas piping is to be opened for servicing, addition, or modification, the section to be worked on shall be turned off from the gas supply at the nearest convenient point, and the line pressure vented to the outdoors, or to ventilated areas of sufficient size to prevent accumulation of flammable mixtures.

If this section exceeds the lengths shown in Table III, the remaining gas shall be displaced with an inert gas.

Table III
Length of Gas Line Requiring Purging for
Servicing or Modification

Nominal Pipe Size, Inches	Min. Length of Piping Requiring Purging
2½	50 feet
3	30 Feet
4	15 feet
6	10 feet
8 or larger	Any length

For SI units: 1 foot = 0.305 m

4.3.2 Placing in Operation. When piping full of air is placed in operation, the air in the piping shall be displaced with fuel gas, provided the piping does not exceed the length shown in Table IV. The air can be safely displaced with fuel gas provided that a moderately rapid and continuous flow of fuel gas is introduced at one end of the line and air is vented out at the other end. The fuel gas flow should be continued without interruption until the vented gas is free of air. **The point of discharge shall not be left unattended during purging.** The vent shall then be closed.

If the piping is 3 inches or larger, the air in the piping shall be displaced with an inert gas, and the inert gas shall then be displaced with fuel gas.

Table IV
Length of Piping Requiring Purging
Before Placing in Operation

Nominal Pipe Size, Inches	Min. Length of Piping Requiring Purging
3	30 feet
4	15 feet
6	10 feet
8 or larger	Any length

For SI units: 1 foot = 0.305 m

4.3.3 Discharge of Purged Gases. The open end of piping systems being purged shall not discharge into confined spaces or areas where there are sources of ignition unless precautions are taken to perform this operation in a safe manner by ventilation of the space, control or purging rate, and elimination of all hazardous conditions.

4.3.4 Placing Equipment in Operation. After the piping has been placed in operation, all equipment shall be purged and then placed in operation, as necessary.

Part 5

Equipment Installation

5.1 General.

5.1.1 Appliances, Accessories, and Equipment To Be Approved. Gas appliances, accessories, and gas utilization equipment shall be approved. Approved shall mean “acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.”

Acceptance of unlisted gas utilization equipment and accessories shall be on the basis of a sound engineering evaluation. In such cases, the equipment shall be safe and suitable for the proposed service and be recommended for the service by the manufacturer.

NOTE: The National Fire Protection Association and the American National Standards Institute do not approve, inspect, or certify any installations, procedures, equipment, or materials. In determining acceptability of installations or procedures, the authority having jurisdiction may base acceptance on compliance with NFPA, ANSI, or other appropriate standards. In the absence of such standards, said authority may require evidence of proper installation, procedure, or use. The authority having jurisdiction may also refer to the listings or labeling practices (*see Section 1.7, Definitions*) of an organization concerned with product evaluations which is in a position to determine compliance with appropriate standards for the current production of listed items. Additional information regarding the coordination of gas utilization equipment design, construction and maintenance can be found in Appendix B.

5.1.2 Added or Converted Equipment. When additional or replacement equipment is installed or an appliance is converted to gas from another fuel, the location in which the equipment is to be operated shall be checked to:

(a) Verify that air for combustion and ventilation is provided when required, in accordance with provisions of Section 5.3. If existing facilities are not adequate, they shall be upgraded to Section 5.3 specifications.

(b) Ensure that the installation components and equipment meet the clearances to combustible material provisions of 5.2.2.

It shall be determined that the installation and operation of the additional or replacement equipment does not render the remaining equipment unsafe for continued operation.

(c) Verify that the venting system is constructed and sized in accordance with the provisions of Part 7. If the existing venting system is not adequate, it shall be upgraded to comply with Part 7.

5.1.3 Type of Gas(es). It shall be determined whether the gas utilization equipment has been designed for use with the gas to which it will be connected. No attempt shall be made to convert the equipment from the gas specified on the rating plate for use with a different gas without consulting the installation instruction, the serving gas supplier, or the equipment manufacturer for complete instructions.

5.1.4 Safety Shutoff Devices for Unlisted LP-Gas Equipment Used Indoors. Unlisted gas utilization equipment for use with undiluted liquefied petroleum gases and installed indoors shall be equipped with safety shutoff devices of the complete shutoff type.

5.1.5 Use of Air or Oxygen Under Pressure. Where air or oxygen under pressure is used in connection with the gas supply, effective means such as a backpressure regulator and relief valve shall be provided to prevent air or oxygen from passing back into the gas piping. Where oxygen is used, installation shall be in accordance with *Standard for the Design and Installation of Oxygen-Fuel Gas Systems for Welding, Cutting, and Allied Processes*, ANSI/NFPA 51.

5.1.6 Protection of Gas Equipment from Fumes or Gases Other than Products of Combustion. When corrosive or flammable process fumes are present, means for their safe disposal shall be provided. Such fumes include carbon monoxide, hydrogen sulfide, ammonia, chlorine, and halogenated hydrocarbons.

NOTE: Halogenated hydrocarbons are particularly injurious and corrosive after contact with flames or hot surfaces.

Gas appliances installed in beauty shops, barber shops, or other facilities where chemicals that generate corrosive or flammable products such as aerosol sprays are routinely used, shall be located in an equipment room separate or partitioned off from other areas with provisions for combustion and dilution air from outdoors.

Exception: This requirement shall not apply to direct vent equipment that is constructed and installed so all air for combustion is obtained from the outside atmosphere and all flue gases are discharged to the outside atmosphere.

5.1.7 Building Structural Members.

(a) Structural members of a building shall not pass through gas utilization equipment having an operating temperature in excess of 500°F (260°C).

(b) Structural members passing through gas utilization equipment having an operating temperature of 500°F (260°C) or less shall be of

noncombustible material. Building columns, girders, beams, or trusses shall not be installed within equipment, unless insulation and ventilation are provided to avoid all deterioration in strength, and linear expansion of the building structure in either a vertical or horizontal direction.

(c) Gas utilization equipment shall be furnished either with load distributing bases or with a sufficient number of supports to prevent damage to either the building structure or equipment.

(d) At the locations selected for installation of gas utilization equipment, the dynamic and static load carrying capacities of the building structure shall be checked to determine if they are adequate to carry the additional loads. The equipment shall be supported and shall be connected to the piping so as not to exert undue stress on the connections.

5.1.8 Flammable Vapors. Gas appliances shall not be installed in any location where flammable vapors are likely to be present, unless the design, operation, and installation are such to eliminate the probable ignition of the flammable vapors. Gas utilization equipment installed in compliance with 5.1.9, 5.1.10, and 5.1.11 shall be considered to comply with the intent of this provision.

5.1.9 Installation in Residential Garages.

(a) Gas utilization equipment in residential garages shall be installed so that all burners and burner ignition devices are located not less than 18 inches (46 cm) above the floor.

(b) Such equipment shall be located, or protected, so it is not subject to physical damage by a moving vehicle.

5.1.10 Installation in Commercial Garages.

(a) *Parking Structures.* Gas utilization equipment installed in enclosed, basement, and underground parking structures shall be installed in accordance with *Standard for Parking Structures*, NFPA 88A.

(b) *Repair Garages.* Gas utilization equipment installed in repair garages shall be installed in a detached building or room, separated from repair areas by walls or partitions, floors, or floor ceiling assemblies that are constructed so as to prohibit the transmission of vapors and having a fire resistance rating of not less than 1 hour, and have no openings in the wall separating the repair area within 8 feet (2.5 m) of the floor. Wall penetrations shall be firestopped. Air for combustion purposes shall be obtained from outside the building. The heating room shall not be used for the storage of combustible materials.

Exception No. 1: Overhead heaters where installed not less than 8 feet (2.5 m) above the floor.

Exception No. 2: Heating equipment for vehicle repair areas where there is no dispensing or transferring of Class I or Class II flammable or combustible liquids, or liquefied petroleum gas, shall be installed in accordance with Automotive and Marine Service Station Code, ANSI/NFPA 30A.

5.1.11 Installation in Aircraft Hangars. Heaters in aircraft hangars shall be installed in accordance with *Standard on Aircraft Hangars*, ANSI/NFPA 409.

5.1.12 Gas Equipment Physical Protection. Where it is necessary to locate gas utilization equipment close to a passageway traveled by vehicles or equipment, guardrails or bumper plates shall be installed to protect the equipment from damage.

5.1.13 Venting of Flue Gases. Gas utilization equipment shall be vented in accordance with the provisions of Part 7.

5.1.14 Extra Device or Attachment. No device or attachment shall be installed on any gas utilization equipment that could in any way impair the combustion of gas.

5.1.15 Adequate Capacity of Piping. When connecting additional gas utilization equipment to a gas piping system, the existing piping shall be checked to determine if it has adequate capacity. (*See Section 2.4.*) If inadequate, the existing system shall be enlarged as necessary, or separate gas piping of adequate capacity shall be run from the point of delivery to the equipment.

5.1.16 Avoid Strain on Gas Piping. Gas utilization equipment shall be supported and so connected to the piping as not to exert undue strain on the connections.

5.1.17 Gas Appliance Pressure Regulators. Where the gas supply pressure is higher than that at which the gas utilization equipment is designed to operate or varies beyond the design pressure limits of the equipment, a gas appliance pressure regulator shall be installed.

5.1.18 Venting of Gas Appliance Pressure Regulators.

(a) Gas appliance pressure regulators requiring access to the atmosphere for successful operation shall be equipped with vent piping leading outdoors or, if the regulator vent is an integral part of the equipment, into the combustion chamber adjacent to a continuous pilot, unless constructed or equipped with a vent limiting means to limit the escape of gas from the vent opening in the event of diaphragm failure.

(b) Vent limiting means shall be employed on listed gas appliance pressure regulators only.

(c) In the case of vents leading outdoors, means shall be employed to prevent water from entering this piping and also to prevent stoppage of it by insects and foreign matter.

(d) Under no circumstances shall a regulator be vented to the gas utilization equipment flue or exhaust system.

(e) In the case of vents entering the combustion chamber, the vent shall be located so the escaping gas will be readily ignited by the pilot and the heat liberated thereby will not adversely affect the normal operation of the safety shutoff system. The terminus of the vent shall be securely held in a fixed position relative to the pilot. For manufactured gas, the need for a flame arrester in the vent piping shall be determined.

(f) A vent line(s) from a gas appliance pressure regulator and a bleed line(s) from a diaphragm type valve shall not be connected to a common manifold terminating in a combustion chamber. Vent lines shall not terminate in positive pressure type combustion chambers.

5.1.19 Bleed Lines for Diaphragm Type Valves.

(a) Diaphragm type valves shall be equipped to convey bleed gas to the outside atmosphere or into the combustion chamber adjacent to a continuous pilot.

(b) In the case of bleed lines leading outdoors, means shall be employed to prevent water from entering this piping and also to prevent stoppage of it by insects and foreign matter.

(c) Bleed lines shall not terminate in the gas utilization equipment flue or exhaust system.

(d) In the case of bleed lines entering the combustion chamber, the bleed line shall be located so the bleed gas will be readily ignited by the pilot and the heat liberated thereby will not adversely affect the normal operation of the safety shutoff system. The terminus of the bleed line shall be securely held in a fixed position relative to the pilot. For manufactured gas, the need for a flame arrester in the bleed line piping shall be determined.

(e) A bleed line(s) from a diaphragm type valve and a vent line(s) from a gas appliance pressure regulator shall not be connected to a common manifold terminating in a combustion chamber. Bleed lines shall not terminate in positive pressure type combustion chambers.

5.1.20 Combination of Equipment. Any combination of gas utilization equipment, attachments, or devices used together in any manner shall comply with the standards that apply to the individual equipment.

5.1.21 Installation Instructions. The installing agency shall conform with the equipment manufacturers' recommendations in completing an installation. The installing agency shall leave the manufacturers' installation, operating, and maintenance instructions in a location on the premises where they will be readily available for reference and guidance of the authority having jurisdiction, service personnel, and the owner or operator.

5.1.22 Protection of Outdoor Equipment. Gas utilization equipment not listed for outdoor installation but installed outdoors shall be provided with protection to the degree that the environment requires. Equipment listed for outdoor installation may be installed without protection in accordance with the provisions of their listing. (*See 5.2.1.*)

5.2 Accessibility and Clearance.

5.2.1 Accessibility for Service. All gas utilization equipment shall be located with respect to building construction and other equipment so as to permit access to the gas utilization equipment. Sufficient clearance shall be maintained to permit cleaning of heating surfaces; the replacement of filters, blowers, motors, burners, controls, and vent connections; the lubrication of moving parts where necessary; the adjustment and cleaning of burners and pilots; and, the proper functioning of explosion vents, if provided. For attic installation, the passageway and servicing area adjacent to the equipment shall be floored.

5.2.2 Clearance to Combustible Materials. Gas utilization equipment and their vent connectors shall be installed with clearances from combustible material so their operation will not create a hazard to persons or property.

Minimum clearances between combustible walls and the back and sides of various conventional types of equipment and their vent connectors are specified in Part 6 and Part 7. (*Reference may also be made to Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel Burning Appliances, ANSI/NFPA 211.*)

Equipment shall not be installed on carpeting, unless the equipment is listed for such installation.

5.3* Air for Combustion and Ventilation.

5.3.1 General.

(a) The provisions of Section 5.3 shall apply to gas utilization equipment installed in buildings and that require air for combustion, ventilation, and dilution of flue gases from within the building.

Exception No. 1: Direct vent equipment that is constructed and installed so that all air for combustion is obtained from the outside atmosphere and all flue gases are discharged to the outside atmosphere.

Exception No. 2: Enclosed furnaces that incorporate an integral total enclosure and use only outside air for combustion and dilution of flue gases.

(b) Equipment shall be located so as not to interfere with proper circulation of combustion, ventilation, and dilution air. Where normal infiltration does not provide the necessary air, outside air shall be introduced.

(c) In addition to air needed for combustion, process air shall be provided as required for cooling of equipment or material, controlling dew point, heating, drying, oxidation, dilution, safety exhaust, odor control, and air for compressors.

(d) In addition to air needed for combustion, air shall be supplied for ventilation, including all air required for comfort and proper working conditions for personnel.

(e) A draft hood or a barometric draft regulator shall be installed in the same room or enclosure as the equipment in such a manner as to prevent any difference in pressure between the hood or regulator and the combustion air supply.

(f) Air for combustion, ventilation, and dilution of flue gases for gas utilization equipment vented by natural draft shall be obtained by application of one of the methods covered in 5.3.3 and 5.3.4.

(g) Air requirements for the operation of exhaust fans, kitchen ventilation systems, clothes dryers, and fireplaces shall be considered in determining the adequacy of a space to provide combustion air requirements.

5.3.2 Equipment Located in Unconfined Spaces.

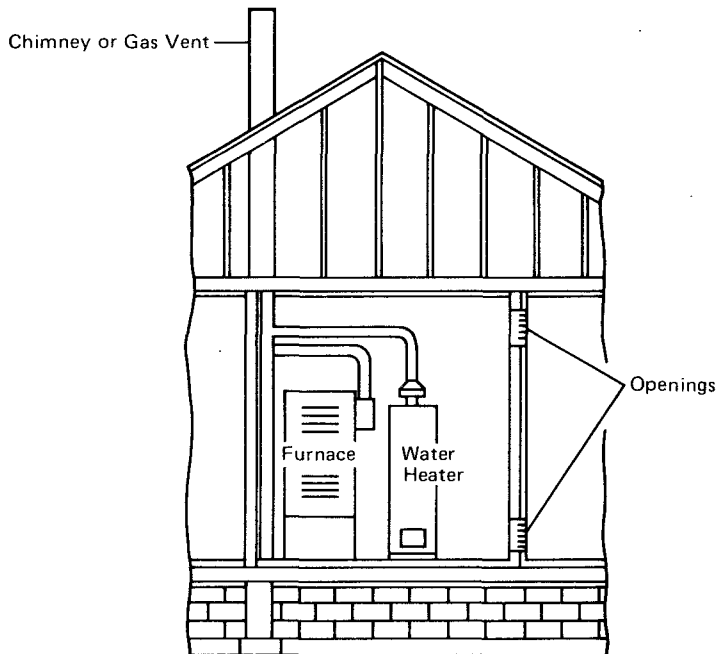
(a) In unconfined spaces in buildings of other than unusually tight construction (*see Section 1.7, Definitions*), infiltration may be adequate to provide air for combustion, ventilation, and dilution of flue gases.

(b) Equipment located in buildings of unusually tight construction (*see Section 1.7, Definitions*) shall be provided with air for combustion, ventilation, and dilution of flue gases using the methods described in 5.3.3(b) or 5.3.4.

5.3.3 Equipment Located in Confined Spaces.

(a) *All Air from Inside the Building.* The confined space shall be provided with two permanent openings communicating directly with an additional room(s) of sufficient volume so that the combined volume of all spaces meets the criteria for an unconfined space. The total input of all gas utilization equipment installed in the combined space shall be considered in

making this determination. Each opening shall have a minimum free area of 1 square inch per 1,000 Btu per hour (22 cm^2 per kw) of the total input rating of all gas utilization equipment in the confined space, but not less than 100 square inches (645 cm^2). One opening shall commence within 12 inches (30 cm) of the top, and one opening shall commence within 12 inches (30 cm) of the bottom, of the enclosure (see Figure 1). The minimum dimension of air openings shall be not less than 3 inches (8 cm).



**Figure 1. Equipment Located in Confined Spaces;
All Air from Inside the Building. See 5.3.3(a).**

(b) *All Air From Outdoors.* The confined space shall be provided with two permanent openings, one commencing within 12 inches (30 cm) of the top, and one commencing within 12 inches (30 cm) of the bottom, of the enclosure. The openings shall communicate directly, or by ducts, with the outdoors or spaces (crawl or attic) that freely communicate with the outdoors. The minimum dimension of air openings shall be not less than 3 inches (8 cm).

1. Where directly communicating with the outdoors, each opening shall have a minimum free area of 1 square inch per 4,000 Btu per hour (5.5 cm^2 per kw) of total input rating of all equipment in the enclosure. (See Figures 2 and 3.)

2. Where communicating with the outdoors through vertical ducts, each opening shall have a minimum free area of 1 square inch per 4,000 Btu per hour (5.5 cm^2 per kw) of total input rating of all equipment in the enclosure. (See Figure 3.)

3. Where communicating with the outdoors through horizontal ducts, each opening shall have a minimum free area of 1 square inch per 2,000 Btu per hour (11 cm^2 per kw) of total input rating of all equipment in the enclosure. (See Figure 4.)

4. Where ducts are used, they shall be of the same cross-sectional area as the free area of the openings to which they connect.

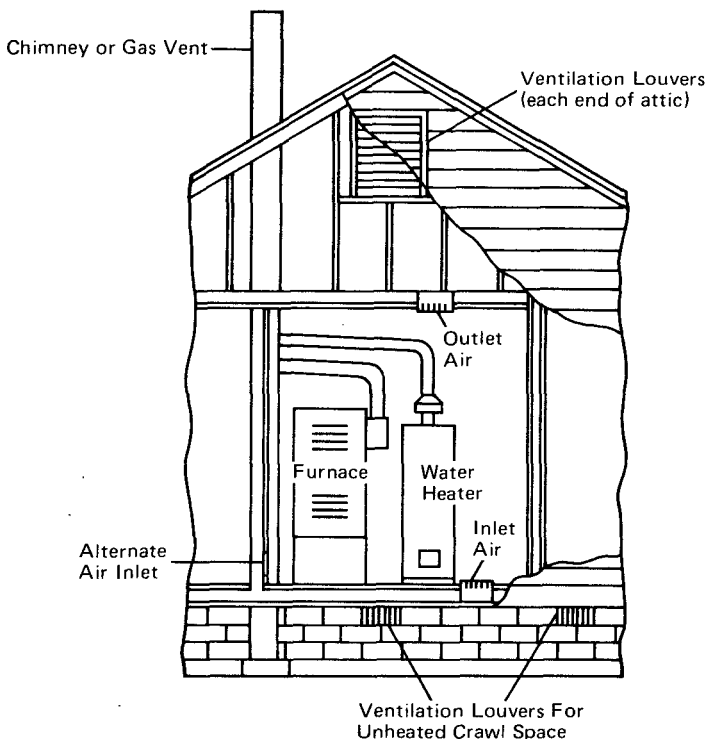


Figure 2. Equipment Located in Confined Spaces; All Air from Outdoors — Inlet Air from Ventilated Crawl Space and Outlet Air to Ventilated Attic. See 5.3.3(b).

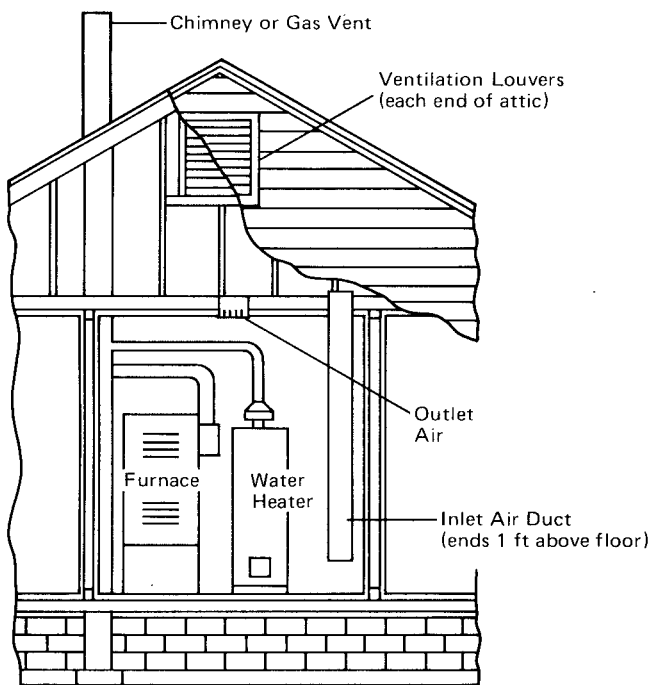


Figure 3. Equipment Located in Confined Spaces; All Air from Outdoors Through Ventilated Attic. See 5.3.3(b).

5.3.4 Specially Engineered Installations. The requirements of 5.3.3 shall be permitted to be waived where special engineering, approved by the authority having jurisdiction, provides an adequate supply of air for combustion, ventilation, and dilution of flue gases.

5.3.5 Louvers and Grilles. In calculating free area in 5.3.3, consideration shall be given to the blocking effect of louvers, grilles, or screens protecting openings. Screens used shall not be smaller than $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch (6.3-mm) mesh. If the free area through a design of louver or grille is known, it shall be used in calculating the size opening required to provide the free area specified. If the design and free area are not known, it shall be assumed that wood louvers will have 20-25 percent free area and metal louvers and grilles will have 60-75 percent free area. Louvers and grilles shall be fixed in the open position or interlocked with the equipment so that they are opened automatically during equipment operation.

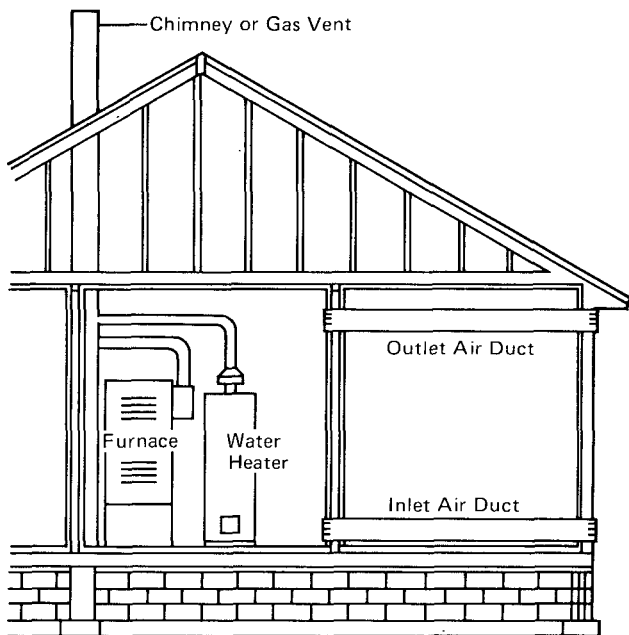


Figure 4. Equipment Located in Confined Spaces;
All Air from Outdoors. See 5.3.3(b).

5.4 Equipment on Roofs.

5.4.1 General.

(a) Gas utilization equipment on roofs shall be designed or enclosed so as to withstand climatic conditions in the area in which they are installed. If enclosures are provided, each enclosure shall permit easy entry and movement, shall be of reasonable height, and shall have at least 30-inch (76-cm) clearance between the entire service access panel(s) of the equipment and the wall of the enclosure.

(b) Roofs on which equipment is to be installed shall be capable of supporting the additional load or shall be reinforced to support the additional load.

(c) All access locks, screws, and bolts shall be of corrosion-resistant material.

5.4.2 Installation of Equipment on Roofs.

(a) Gas utilization equipment shall be installed in accordance with its listing and the manufacturers' installation instructions.

(b) Equipment shall be installed on a well-drained surface of the roof. At least 6-feet (1.8-m) clearance shall be available between any part of the equipment and the edge of a roof or similar hazard, or rigidly fixed rails or guards at least 42 inches (1.1 m) in height shall be provided on the exposed side, except that parapets or other building structures at least 42 inches (1.1 m) in height may be utilized in lieu of rails or guards.

(c) All equipment requiring an external source of electrical power for its operation shall be provided with (1) a readily accessible electrical disconnecting means within sight of the equipment, which will completely deenergize the equipment, and (2) a 120-volt AC grounding type receptacle outlet on the roof adjacent to the equipment. The receptacle outlet shall be on the supply side of the disconnect switch.

(d) Where water stands on the roof at the equipment or in the passageways to the equipment, or where the roof is of a design having a water seal, a suitable platform or walkway or both shall be provided above the water line. Such platform(s) or walkway(s) shall be located adjacent to the equipment and control panels so that the equipment can be safely serviced where water stands on the roof.

5.4.3 Access to Equipment on Roofs.

(a) Gas utilization equipment located on roofs or other elevated locations shall be accessible.

(b) Buildings of more than 15 feet (4.6 m) in height shall have an inside means of access to the roof.

(c) The inside means of access shall be a permanent, or fold-away, inside stairway or ladder, terminating in an enclosure, scuttle, or trap door. Such scuttles or trap doors shall be at least 24 inches by 24 inches (61 cm by 61 cm) in size, shall open easily and safely under all conditions, especially snow, and shall be constructed so as to permit access from the roof side unless deliberately locked on the inside.

At least 6 feet (1.8 m) of clearance shall be available between the access opening and the edge of the roof or similar hazard, or rigidly fixed rails or guards at least 42 inches (1.1 m) in height shall be provided on the exposed side; parapets or other building structure at least 42 inches (1.1 m) in height may be utilized in lieu of guards or rails.

(d) Proper permanent lighting shall be provided at the roof access. The switch for such lighting shall be located inside the building near the access means leading to the roof.

5.4.4 Additional Provisions. *(Also see 5.1.22, 5.2.1, and 7.3.4.)*

5.5 Equipment Connections to Building Piping.

5.5.1 Connecting Gas Equipment. Gas utilization equipment shall be connected to the building piping in compliance with 5.5.4 by one of the following:

- (a) Rigid metallic pipe and fittings
- (b) Semirigid metallic tubing and metallic fittings; aluminum alloy tubing shall not be used in exterior locations
- (c) Listed connectors used in accordance with the terms of their listing that are completely in the same room as the equipment
- (d) Listed gas hose connectors in accordance with 5.5.2
- (e) Gas-fired food service (commercial cooking) equipment listed for use with casters or otherwise subject to movement for cleaning, and other large and heavy gas utilization equipment that may be moved, shall be connected in accordance with the connector manufacturers' installation instructions using a listed appliance connector complying with *Connectors for Movable Gas Appliances*, ANSI Z21.69.
- (f) In (b), (c), and (e) above, the connector or tubing shall be installed so as to be protected against physical and thermal damage. Aluminum-alloy tubing and connectors shall be coated to protect against external corrosion where they are in contact with masonry, plaster, or insulation or are subject to repeated wettings by such liquids as water (except rain water), detergents, or sewage.

5.5.2 Use of Gas Hose Connectors. Listed gas hose connectors shall be used in accordance with the terms of their listing and as follows:

(a) *Indoor.* Indoor gas hose connectors shall be permitted to be used with laboratory, shop, or ironing equipment that requires mobility during operation. An equipment shutoff valve shall be installed where the connector is attached to the building piping. The connector shall be of minimum length and shall not exceed 6 feet (1.8 m). The connector shall not be concealed and shall not extend from one room to another nor pass through wall partitions, ceilings, or floors.

(b) *Outdoor.* Outdoor gas hose connectors shall be permitted to be used to connect portable outdoor gas-fired equipment. An equipment shutoff valve or a listed quick-disconnect device or a listed gas convenience outlet shall be installed where the connector is attached to the supply piping and in such a manner to prevent the accumulation of water or foreign matter. This connection shall only be made in the outdoor area where the equipment is to be used.

5.5.3 Connection of Portable and Mobile Industrial Gas Equipment.

(a) Portable industrial gas utilization equipment or equipment requiring mobility or subject to vibration shall be permitted to be connected to the building gas piping system by the use of flexible hose suitable and safe for the conditions under which it may be used.

(b) Industrial gas utilization equipment requiring mobility shall be permitted to be connected to the rigid piping by the use of swivel joints or couplings that are suitable for the service required. Where swivel joints or couplings are used, only the minimum number required shall be installed.

(c) Industrial gas utilization equipment subject to vibration shall be permitted to be connected to the building piping system by the use of all metal flexible connectors suitable for the service required.

(d) Where flexible connections are used, they shall be of the minimum practical length and shall not extend from one room to another nor pass through any walls, partitions, ceilings, or floors. Flexible connections shall not be used in any concealed location. They shall be protected against physical or thermal damage and shall be provided with gas shutoff valves in readily accessible locations in rigid piping upstream from the flexible connections.

5.5.4 Equipment Shutoff Valves and Connections. Gas utilization equipment connected to a piping system shall have an accessible, approved manual shutoff valve with a nondisplaceable valve member, or a listed gas convenience outlet, installed within 6 feet (1.8 m) of the equipment it serves. Where a connector is used, the valve shall be installed upstream of the connector. A union or flanged connection shall be provided downstream from this valve to permit removal of controls.

Shutoff valves serving decorative gas appliances shall be permitted to be installed in fireplaces if listed for such use.

5.5.5 Quick-Disconnect Devices. Gas utilization equipment connectors shall be permitted to be connected to the building piping by means of a listed quick-disconnect device, and where installed indoors, an approved manual shutoff valve with a nondisplaceable valve member shall be installed upstream of the quick-disconnect device.

5.5.6 Gas Convenience Outlets. Gas utilization equipment shall be permitted to be connected to the building piping by means of a listed gas convenience outlet, in conjunction with a listed appliance connector used in accordance with the terms of their listings.

NOTE: For information on gas convenience outlets, see *Requirements for Gas Convenience Outlets*, AGA 7-90.

5.5.7 Sediment Trap. If a sediment trap is not incorporated as a part of the gas utilization equipment, a sediment trap shall be installed as close to the inlet of the equipment as practical at the time of equipment installation. The sediment trap shall be either a tee fitting with a capped nipple in the bottom outlet as illustrated in Figure 5 or other device recognized as an effective sediment trap. Illuminating appliances, ranges, clothes dryers, and outdoor grills need not be so equipped.

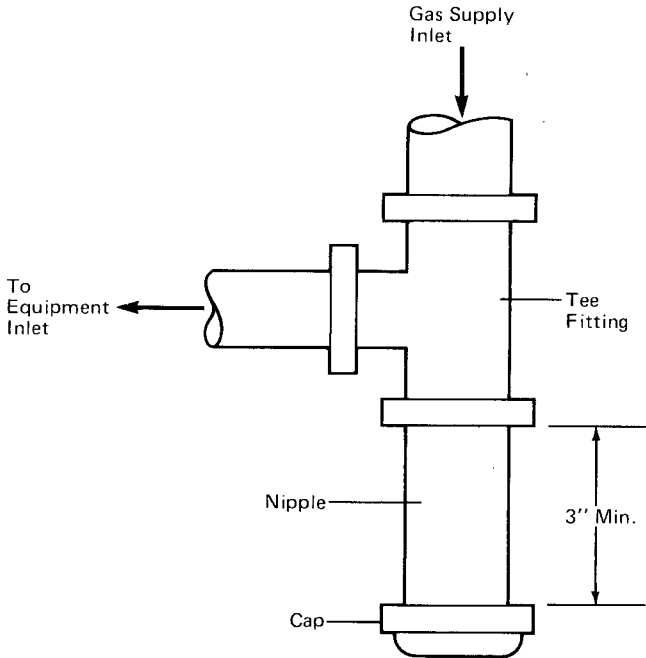


Figure 5. Method of Installing a Tee Fitting Sediment Trap.

5.5.8 Installation of Piping. Piping shall be installed in a manner not to interfere with inspection, maintenance, or servicing of the gas utilization equipment.

5.6 Electrical.

5.6.1 Electrical Connections. Electrical connections between gas utilization equipment and the building wiring, including the grounding of the equipment, shall conform to the *National Electrical Code*, ANSI/NFPA 70.

5.6.2 Electric Ignition and Control Devices. Electrical ignition, burner control, and electrical vent damper devices shall not permit unsafe operation of the gas utilization equipment in the event of electrical power interruption or when the power is restored.

5.6.3 Electrical Circuit. The electrical circuit employed for operating the automatic main gas-control valve, automatic pilot, room temperature thermostat, limit control, or other electrical devices used with the gas utilization equipment shall be in accordance with the wiring diagrams supplied with the equipment.

5.6.4 Continuous Power. All gas utilization equipment using electrical controls shall have the controls connected into a permanently live electrical circuit, i.e., one that is not controlled by a light switch. Central heating equipment shall be provided with a separate electrical circuit.

5.7 Room Temperature Thermostats.

5.7.1 Locations. Room temperature thermostats shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions.

5.7.2 Drafts. Any hole in the plaster or panel through which the wires pass from the thermostat to the gas utilization equipment being controlled shall be sealed so as to prevent drafts from affecting the thermostat.

Part 6

Installation of Specific Equipment

6.1 General.

(a) This Part is primarily applicable to nonindustrial type gas utilization equipment and installations and, unless specifically indicated, does not apply to industrial type equipment and installations. Listed gas utilization equipment shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturers' instructions, or as elsewhere specified in this Part. Unlisted equipment shall be installed as specified in this Part as applicable to the equipment.

For additional information concerning particular gas equipment and accessories, including industrial types, reference can be made to the standards listed in Part 12 and Appendix L.

(b) Gas utilization equipment shall not be installed so its combustion, ventilation, and dilution air are obtained only from a bedroom or bathroom unless the bedroom or bathroom is an unconfined space. (See 5.3.2 and Section 1.7, *Definitions*.)

NOTE: Also see Prohibited Installations, 6.6.1, 6.7.1, 6.24.1, and 6.30.1.

6.2 Air Conditioning Equipment.

6.2.1 Independent Gas Piping. Gas piping serving heating gas utilization equipment shall be permitted to also serve cooling equipment where heating and cooling equipment cannot be operated simultaneously. (See Section 2.4.)

6.2.2 Connection of Gas Engine-Powered Air Conditioners. To protect against the effects of normal vibration in service, gas engines shall not be rigidly connected to the gas supply piping.

6.2.3 Clearances for Indoor Installation.

(a) Listed air conditioning equipment installed in rooms that are large in comparison with the size of the equipment shall be installed with clearances not less than those specified in Line I of Table V.

Exception No. 1: Air conditioning equipment listed for installation at lesser clearances than those specified in Table V may be installed in accordance with its listing and the manufacturers' instructions.

Exception No. 2: Air conditioning equipment listed for installation at greater clearances than those specified in Table V shall be installed in accordance with its listing and the manufacturers' instructions unless protected as specified in Exception No. 3.

Exception No. 3: Air conditioning equipment installed in rooms large in comparison with the size of the equipment may be installed with reduced clearances to combustible material, provided the combustible material or the equipment is protected as described in Table VI.

(b) Air conditioning equipment installed in spaces such as alcoves and closets shall be specifically listed for such installation and installed in accordance with the terms of its listing. The installation clearances for air conditioning equipment in rooms not large in comparison with the size of equipment shall be as specified in the listing, regardless of whether the enclosure is of combustible or noncombustible material, and shall not be reduced by the protection methods described in Table VI.

(c) Unlisted air conditioning equipment shall be installed with clearances from combustible material of not less than 18 inches (46 cm) above the equipment and at the sides, front, and rear, and 9 inches (23 cm) from the draft hood.

(d) Where the plenum for an air conditioner that includes provisions for heating air is adjacent to combustible material, the clearance shall be measured to the surface of the plaster or other noncombustible finish where the clearance specified is 2 inches (5 cm) or less.

6.2.4 Erection and Mounting. Air conditioning equipment shall be erected in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions. Unless the equipment is listed for installation on a combustible surface such as a floor or roof, or unless the surface is protected in an approved manner, it shall be installed on a surface of noncombustible construction with noncombustible material and surface finish and with no combustible material against the underside thereof.

6.2.5 Plenums and Air Ducts. A plenum supplied as a part of the air conditioning equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions. Where a plenum is not supplied with the equipment, any fabrication and installation instructions provided by the manufacturer shall be followed. The method of connecting supply and return ducts shall facilitate proper circulation of air.

NOTE: Reference may be made to *Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems*, ANSI/NFPA 90A, or *Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems*, ANSI/NFPA 90B.

Where the air conditioner is installed within a room not large in comparison with the size of the equipment, the air circulated by the equipment shall be handled by ducts that are sealed to the casing of the equipment and that separate the circulating air from the combustion and ventilation air.

6.2.6 Refrigeration Coils. (See 6.3.7 and 6.3.8.)

6.2.7 Switches in Electrical Supply Line. Means for interrupting the electrical supply to the air conditioning equipment and to its associated cooling tower (if supplied and installed in a location remote from the air conditioner) shall be provided within sight of and not over 50 feet (15 m) from the air conditioner and cooling tower.

6.3 Central Heating Boilers and Furnaces.

6.3.1 Clearance.

(a) Central heating boilers and furnaces installed in rooms large in comparison with the size of the equipment shall be installed with clearances not less than specified in Table V.

Exception No. 1: Central heating furnaces and boilers listed for installation at lesser clearances than specified in Table V shall be permitted to be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturers' instructions.

Exception No. 2: Central heating furnaces and boilers installed in rooms large in comparison with the size of the equipment shall be permitted to be installed with reduced clearances to combustible material, provided the combustible material or the equipment is protected as described in Table VI.

(b) Central heating furnaces and boilers installed in spaces such as alcoves and closets shall be specifically listed for such installation. The installation clearances for furnaces and boilers in rooms not large in comparison with the size of the equipment shall be as specified in the listing, regardless of whether the enclosure is of combustible or non-combustible material, and shall not be reduced by the protection methods described in Table VI.

(c) Where the plenum is adjacent to plaster on metal lath or noncombustible material attached to combustible material, the clearance shall be measured to the surface of the plaster or other noncombustible finish where the clearance specified is 2 inches (5 cm) or less.

(d) The clearance to this equipment shall not interfere with combustion air, draft hood clearance and relief, and accessibility for servicing. (See 5.2.1, Section 5.3, and 7.12.8.)

Table V
Clearances to Combustible Material for Furnaces and Boilers Installed in Rooms Which Are Large in Comparison
With Size of Equipment, Except as Provided in 6.3.1(a) (See Note 9)

	Minimum Clearance, Inches				
	Above and Sides of Plenum	Jacket Sides and Rear	Front (See Note 1)	Draft Hood and Barometric Draft Regulator	Vent Connector (See Note 2)
I. Listed automatically fired, forced air or gravity system, with 250 F temperature limit control.	2 (See Notes 3 and 4)	6	18	6	6 (See Note 10)
II. Unlisted automatically fired, forced air or gravity system, equipped with temperature limit control which cannot be set higher than 250 F.	6 (See Note 5)	6	18	18 (See Note 6)	18 (See Note 6)
III. Listed Automatically Fired Heating Boilers—Steam boilers operating at not over 15 psi gage pressure and hot water boilers operating at not in excess of 250 F.	6 (See Note 7)	6	18	6	6 (See Note 10)
IV. Unlisted Automatically Fired Heating Boilers—Steam boilers operating at not over 15 psi gage pressure and hot water boilers operating at not in excess of 250 F.	6 (See Note 7)	6	18	18 (See Note Note 6)	18 (See Note 6)
V. Central heating boilers and furnaces, other than above.	18 (See Note 8)	18	18	18 (See Note 6)	18 (See Note 6)

For SI units: 1 inch = 2.54 cm; 250°F = 121°C

NOTES APPLICABLE TO TABLE V

1. Front clearance shall be sufficient for servicing the burner and furnace or boiler.

2. The vent connector clearance does not apply to listed Type B gas vents.

3. This clearance may be reduced to 1 inch (2.5 cm) for a listed forced air or gravity furnace equipped with:

(a) A limit control that cannot be set higher than 200°F (93.3°C), or

(b) A marking to indicate that the outlet air temperature cannot exceed 200°F (93.3°C).

4. Clearance from supply ducts within 3 feet (0.9 m) of the plenum shall not be less than that specified from the plenum. No clearance is necessary beyond this distance.

5. Clearance from supply ducts within 6 feet (1.8 m) of the plenum shall not be less than 6 inches (15 cm). No clearance is necessary beyond this distance.

6. For unlisted gas utilization equipment equipped with an approved draft hood, this clearance may be reduced to 9 inches (23 cm).

7. This clearance is above top of boiler.

8. Clearance from supply ducts shall not be less than 18 inches (46 cm) out to 3 feet (0.9 m) from the plenum, not less than 6 inches (15 cm) from 3 feet to 6 feet (0.9 m to 1.8 m), and not less than 1 inch (2.5 cm) beyond 6 feet (1.8 m).

9. Rooms that are large in comparison with the size of the equipment are rooms having a volume equal to at least 12 times the total volume of an air conditioning appliance or furnace and at least 16 times the total volume of a boiler or water heater. Total volume of an appliance is determined from exterior dimensions and is to include fan compartments and burner vestibules, where used. Where the actual ceiling height of a room is greater than 8 feet (2.4 m), the volume of a room shall be figured on the basis of a ceiling height of 8 feet (2.4 m).

10. These clearances shall apply unless the listing of an appliance specifies different clearances, in which case the listed clearances shall apply.

Table VI
Reduction of Clearances with Specified Forms of Protection

Type of protection applied to and covering all surfaces of combustible material within the distance specified as the required clearance with no protection (See Figures 6, 7, and 8)	Where the required clearance with no protection from appliance, vent connector, or single wall metal pipe is:									
	36 inches		18 inches		12 inches		9 inches		6 inches	
	Allowable Clearances with Specified Protection, inches									
	Use Col. 1 for clearances above appliance or horizontal connector Use Col. 2 for clearances from appliance, vertical connector, and single-wall metal pipe									
	Above Col. 1	Sides and Rear Col. 2	Above Col. 1	Sides and Rear Col. 2	Above Col. 1	Sides and Rear Col. 2	Above Col. 1	Sides and Rear Col. 2	Above Col. 1	Sides and Rear Col. 2
(a) 3½ in. thick masonry wall without ventilated air space	—	24	—	12	—	9	—	6	—	5
(b) ½ in. insulation board over 1 in. glass fiber or mineral wool batts	24	18	12	9	9	6	6	5	4	3
(c) 0.024 sheet metal over 1 in. glass fiber or mineral wool batts reinforced with wire on rear face with ventilated air space	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3
(d) 3½ in. thick masonry wall with ventilated air space	—	12	—	6	—	6	—	6	—	6
(e) 0.024 sheet metal with ventilated air space	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	2
(f) ½ in. thick insulation board with ventilated air space	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3

Table VI (continued)

(g) 0.024 sheet metal with ventilated air space over 0.024 sheet metal with ventilated air space	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3
(h) 1 in. glass fiber or mineral wool batts sandwiched between two sheets 0.024 sheet metal with ventilated air space.	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3

For SI units: 1 inch = 2.54 cm

NOTES APPLICABLE TO TABLE VI

1. Reduction of clearances from combustible materials shall not interfere with combustion air, draft hood clearance and relief, and accessibility of servicing.

2. All clearances shall be measured from the outer surface of the combustible material to the nearest point on the surface of the appliance, disregarding any intervening protection applied to the combustible material.

3. Spacers and ties shall be of noncombustible material. No spacer or tie shall be used directly opposite appliance or connector.

4. Where all clearance reduction systems using a ventilated air space, adequate provision for air circulation shall be provided as described. (See *Figures 7 and 8.*)

5. There shall be at least 1 inch (2.5 cm) between clearance reduction system and combustible walls and ceilings for reduction systems using ventilated air space.

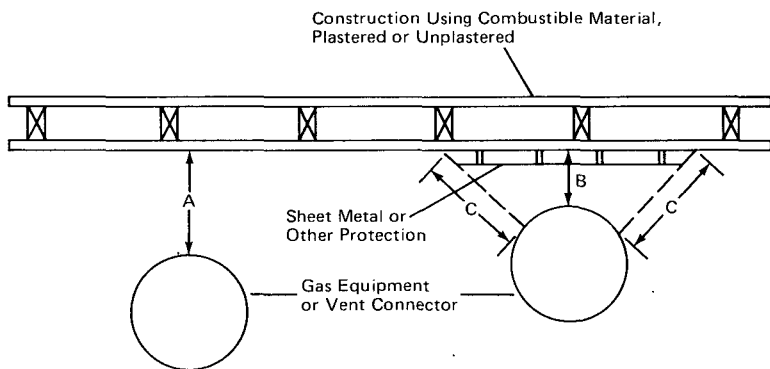
6. If a wall protector is mounted on a single flat wall away from corners, adequate air circulation may be provided by leaving only the bottom and top edges or only the side and top edges open with at least 1 inch (2.5 cm) air gap.

7. Mineral wool batts (blanket or board) shall have a minimum density of 8 pounds per cubic foot (128 kg per m³) and a minimum melting point of 1500°F (816°C).

8. Insulation material used as part of clearance reduction system shall have a thermal conductivity of 1.0 Btu inch per square foot per hour-°F (0.144 watts per meter-kelvin) or less.

9. There shall be at least 1 inch (2.5 cm) between the appliance and the protector. In no case shall the clearance between the appliance and the combustible surface be reduced below that allowed in the table.

10. All clearances and thicknesses are minimum; larger clearances and thicknesses are acceptable.



"A" equals the clearance with no protection specified in Tables V and IX and in the sections applying to various types of equipment.

"B" equals the reduced clearance permitted in accordance with Table VI. The protection applied to the construction using combustible material shall extend far enough in each direction to make "C" equal to "A."

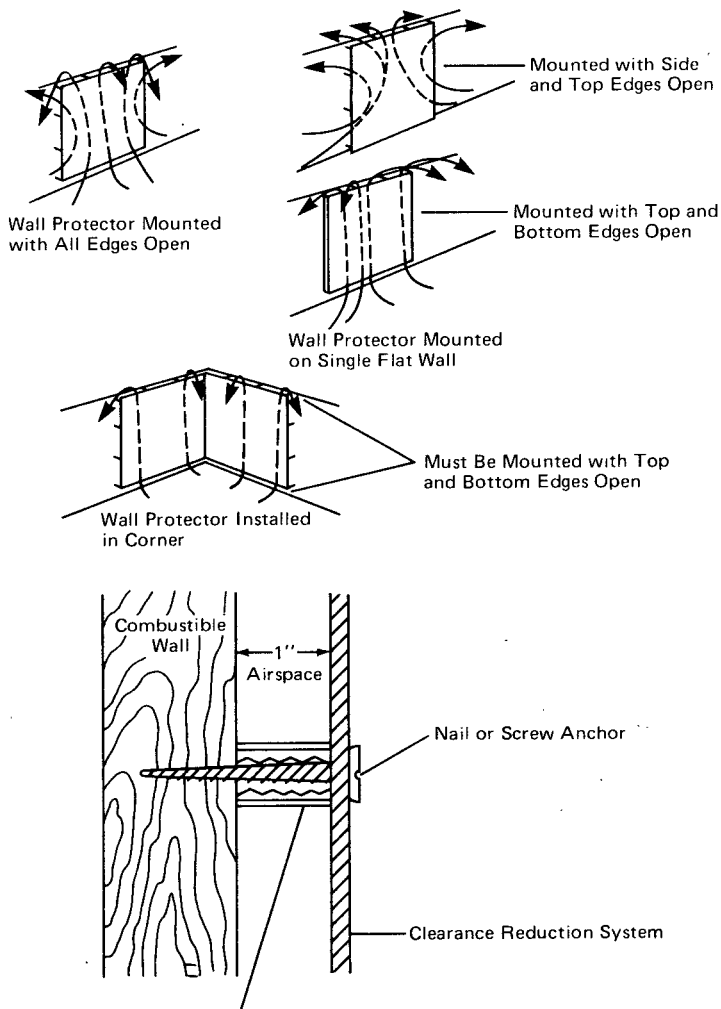
Figure 6. Extent of Protection Necessary to Reduce Clearances from Gas Equipment or Vent Connectors.

6.3.2 Erection and Mounting. A central heating boiler or furnace shall be erected in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions and shall be installed on a floor of noncombustible construction with noncombustible flooring and surface finish and with no combustible material against the underside thereof or on fire-resistive slabs or arches having no combustible material against the underside thereof, unless listed for installation on a combustible floor or the floor is protected in an approved manner.

6.3.3 Temperature or Pressure Limiting Devices. Steam and hot water boilers, respectively, shall be provided with approved automatic limiting devices for shutting down the burner(s) to prevent boiler steam pressure or boiler water temperature from exceeding the maximum allowable working pressure or temperature.

Safety limit controls shall not be used as operating controls.

6.3.4 Low Water Cutoff. Hot water boilers installed above the radiation level and all steam boilers shall be provided with an automatic means to shut off the fuel supply to the burner(s) if the boiler water level drops to the lowest safe water line.



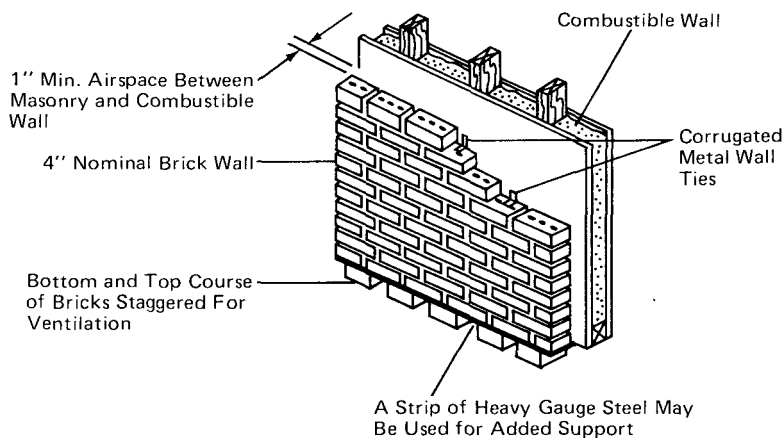
1" Noncombustible spacer such as stacked washers, small diameter pipe, tubing, or electrical conduit.

Masonry walls may be attached to combustible walls using wall ties.

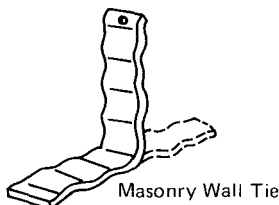
Do not use spacers directly behind appliance or connector.

For SI units: 1 inch = 2.54 cm

Figure 7. Wall Protector Clearance Reduction System.



NOTE: Do Not Place Masonry Wall Ties Directly Behind Appliance or Connector



For SI units: 1 inch = 2.54 cm

Figure 8. Masonry Clearance Reduction System.

6.3.5* Steam Safety and Pressure Relief Valves. Steam and hot water boilers shall be equipped, respectively, with listed or approved steam safety or pressure relief valves of appropriate discharge capacity and conforming with ASME requirements. A shutoff valve shall not be placed between the relief valve and the boiler, or on discharge pipes between such valves and the atmosphere.

6.3.6 Plenums and Air Ducts.

(a) Plenums and air ducts shall be installed in accordance with *Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems*, ANSI/NFPA 90A, or *Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems*, ANSI/NFPA 90B.

(b) A plenum supplied as a part of a furnace shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions.

(c) When a plenum is not supplied with the furnace, any fabrication and installation instructions provided by the manufacturer shall be followed. The method of connecting supply and return ducts shall facilitate proper circulation of air.

NOTE: Reference may be made to *Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems*, ANSI/NFPA 90A or to *Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems*, ANSI/NFPA 90B.

(d) When a furnace is installed so supply ducts carry air circulated by the furnace to areas outside the space containing the furnace, the return air shall also be handled by a duct(s) sealed to the furnace casing and terminating outside the space containing the furnace.

6.3.7 Refrigeration Coils.

(a) A refrigeration coil shall not be installed in conjunction with a forced air furnace where circulation of cooled air is provided by the furnace blower, unless the blower has sufficient capacity to overcome the external static resistance imposed by the duct system and cooling coil at the air throughput necessary for heating or cooling, whichever is greater.

(b) Furnaces shall not be located upstream from cooling units, unless the cooling unit is designed or equipped so as not to develop excessive temperature or pressure.

(c) Refrigeration coils shall be installed in parallel with or on the downstream side of central furnaces to avoid condensation in the heating element, unless the furnace has been specifically listed for downstream installation. With a parallel flow arrangement, the dampers or other means used to control flow of air shall be sufficiently tight to prevent any circulation of cooled air through the furnace.

(d) Means shall be provided for disposal of condensate and to prevent dripping of condensate on the heating element.

6.3.8 Cooling Units Used with Heating Boilers.

(a) Boilers, where used in conjunction with refrigeration systems, shall be installed so that the chilled medium is piped in parallel with the heating boiler with appropriate valves to prevent the chilled medium from entering the heating boiler.

(b) Where hot water heating boilers are connected to heating coils located in air handling units where they may be exposed to refrigerated air circulation, such boiler piping systems shall be equipped with flow control valves or other automatic means to prevent gravity circulation of the boiler water during the cooling cycle.

6.4 Clothes Dryers.

6.4.1 Clearance.

(a) Listed Type 1 clothes dryers shall be installed with a minimum clearance of 6 inches (15 cm) from adjacent combustible material, except that clothes dryers listed for installation at lesser clearances may be installed in accordance with their listing. Type 1 clothes dryers installed in closets shall be specifically listed for such installation.

(b) Listed Type 2 clothes dryers shall be installed with clearances of not less than shown on the marking plate and in the manufacturers' instructions. Type 2 clothes dryers designed and marked "For use only in noncombustible locations" shall not be installed elsewhere.

(c) Unlisted clothes dryers shall be installed with clearances to combustible material of not less than 18 inches (46 cm). Combustible floors under unlisted clothes dryers shall be protected in an approved manner.

6.4.2 Exhausting to the Outside Air.

(a) Type 1 clothes dryers installed in closets shall be exhausted to the outside air, and no other fuel-burning appliance shall be installed in the same closet. Type 1 clothes dryers shall not be installed in bathrooms or bedrooms unless exhausted to the outside air.

(b) Type 2 clothes dryers shall be exhausted to the outside air.

6.4.3 Provisions for Make-Up Air.

(a) Make-up air shall be provided for closet installed Type 1 clothes dryers in accordance with the manufacturers' installation instructions.

NOTE: Where a Type 1 clothes dryer is exhausted to the outside, consideration shall be given to provision for make-up air.

(b) Provision for make-up air shall be provided for Type 2 clothes dryers; with a minimum free area (*see* 5.3.5) of 1 square inch for each 1,000 Btu per hour (22 cm^2 per kw) total input rating of the dryer(s) installed.

6.4.4 Exhaust Ducts for Type 1 Clothes Dryers.

(a) A clothes dryer exhaust duct shall not be connected into any vent connector, gas vent, chimney, crawl space, attic, or other similar concealed space.

(b) Ducts for exhausting clothes dryers shall not be assembled with screws or other fastening means that extend into the duct and that would catch lint and reduce the efficiency of the exhaust system.

6.4.5 Exhaust Ducts for Type 2 Clothes Dryers.

(a) Exhaust ducts for Type 2 clothes dryers shall comply with 6.4.4.

(b) Exhaust ducts for Type 2 clothes dryers shall be constructed of sheet metal or other noncombustible material. Such ducts shall be equivalent in strength and corrosion resistance to ducts made of galvanized sheet steel not less than 0.0195 inch (0.5 mm) thick.

(c) Type 2 clothes dryers shall be equipped or installed with lint controlling means.

(d) Exhaust ducts for Type 2 clothes dryers shall have a clearance of at least 6 inches (15 cm) to combustible material.

Exception: Exhaust ducts for Type 2 clothes dryers shall be permitted to be installed with reduced clearances to combustible material, provided the combustible material is protected as described in Table VI.

(e) Where ducts pass through walls, floors, or partitions, the space around the duct shall be sealed with noncombustible material.

(f) Multiple installations of Type 2 clothes dryers shall be made in a manner to prevent adverse operation due to back pressures that might be created in the exhaust systems.

6.4.6 Multiple Family or Public Use. All clothes dryers installed for multiple family or public use shall be equipped with approved safety shutoff devices and shall be installed as specified for a Type 2 clothes dryer under 6.4.5.

6.5 Conversion Burners. Installation of conversion burners shall conform to *Standard for Installation of Domestic Gas Conversion Burners*, ANSI Z21.8.

6.6 Decorative Appliances for Installation in Vented Fireplaces.

6.6.1 Prohibited Installations. Decorative appliances for installation in vented fireplaces shall not be installed in bathrooms or bedrooms unless the appliance is listed and the bedroom or bathroom is an unconfined space. (*See 5.3.2 and Section 1.7, Definitions.*)

NOTE: For information on decorative appliances for installation in vented fireplaces, see *Decorative Gas Appliances for Installation in Vented Fireplaces*, ANSI Z21.60.

6.6.2 Installation. A decorative appliance for installation in a vented fireplace shall be installed only in a vented fireplace having a working chimney flue and constructed of noncombustible materials. These appliances shall not be thermostatically controlled.

(a) A listed decorative appliance for installation in a vented fireplace shall be installed in accordance with its listing and the manufacturers' instructions.

(b) An unlisted decorative appliance for installation in a vented fireplace shall be installed in a fireplace having a permanent free opening, based on appliance input rating and chimney height, equal to or greater than that specified in Table VII.

6.6.3 Fireplace Screens. A fireplace screen shall be installed with a decorative appliance for installation in a vented fireplace.

6.7 Decorative Appliances, Vented.

6.7.1 Prohibited Installations. Unlisted vented decorative appliances shall not be installed in bathrooms or bedrooms.

NOTE: For information on vented decorative appliances, see *Vented Decorative Gas Appliances*, ANSI Z21.50.

6.7.2 Installation.

(a) Listed vented decorative appliances shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturers' instructions. They shall be permitted to be installed in or attached to combustible material when so listed.

(b) Unlisted vented decorative appliances shall not be installed in or attached to combustible material. They shall have a clearance at the sides and rear of not less than 18 inches (46 cm). Combustible floors under unlisted vented decorative appliances shall be protected in an approved manner. Such unlisted appliances shall be equipped with a draft hood and be properly vented in accordance with Part 7.

Exception: Appliances that make use of metal, asbestos, or ceramic material to direct radiation to the front of the appliance shall have a clearance of 36 inches (91 cm) in front and, if constructed with a double back of metal or ceramic, shall be permitted to be installed with a clearance of 18 inches (46 cm) at the sides and 12 inches (30 cm) at the rear.

(c) Panels, grilles, and access doors that must be removed for normal servicing operations shall not be attached to the building.

6.7.3 Combustion and Circulating Air. Combustion and circulating air shall be provided in accordance with Section 5.3.

Table VII
Free Opening Area of Chimney Damper for Venting Flue Gases from Unlisted Decorative Appliances
for Installation in Vented Fireplaces

Chimney Height, Feet	Minimum Permanent Free Opening, Square Inches*						
	8	13	20	29	39	51	64
	Appliance Input Rating, Btu Per Hour						
6	7,800	14,000	23,200	34,000	46,400	62,400	80,000
8	8,400	15,200	25,200	37,00	50,400	68,000	86,000
10	9,000	16,800	27,600	40,400	55,800	74,400	96,400
15	9,800	18,200	30,200	44,600	62,400	84,000	108,800
20	10,600	20,200	32,600	50,400	68,400	94,000	122,200
30	11,200	21,600	36,600	55,200	76,800	105,800	138,600

For SI units: 1 foot = 0.305 m; 1 inch² = 6.45 cm²; 1000 Btu per hour = 0.293 kw.

* The first six minimum permanent free openings (8 to 51 sq. in.) correspond approximately to the cross-sectional areas of chimneys having diameters of 3 through 8 inches, respectively. The 64 sq. in. opening corresponds to the cross-sectional area of standard 8 in. x 8 in. chimney tile.

6.8 Direct Make-Up Air Heaters.

6.8.1 Installation. Direct make-up air heaters shall not be used to supply any area containing sleeping quarters.

6.8.2 Clearance from Combustible Material. The clearances specified below shall not interfere with combustion air, accessibility for operation, and servicing.

(a) Listed direct make-up air heaters shall be installed in accordance with their listings and the manufacturers' instructions.

(b) Unlisted direct make-up air heaters shall be installed with clearances to combustible material of not less than 18 inches (46 cm). Combustible floors under unlisted floor-mounted heaters shall be protected in an approved manner.

6.8.3 Outside Air. All air handled by a direct make-up air heater, including combustion air, shall be brought in from outdoors. Indoor air may be added to the outdoor airstream after the outdoor airstream has passed the combustion zone.

6.8.4 Outside Louvers. If outside louvers of either the manual or automatic type are used, they shall be proved in the open position before the main burners can operate.

6.8.5 Controls.

(a) Listed direct make-up air heaters shall be equipped with airflow sensing devices, safety shutoff devices, operating temperature controls, and thermally actuated temperature limit controls in accordance with the terms of their listings.

(b) Unlisted direct make-up air heaters shall be equipped with:

1. Airflow sensing devices so designed and installed as to shut off the gas to the main burners upon failure of either combustion air or main air supply (controls actuated by failure of the power supply to the blower motor do not meet the intent of this provision);

2. Combustion safeguards, including manual reset safety shutoff devices; and

3. Operating temperature controls and thermally actuated manual reset temperature limit controls, the latter of which shall not permit the discharge air temperature to exceed 150°F (66°C).

6.8.6 Input Ratings. Unlisted direct make-up air heaters shall have input ratings such that the ratio of gas input by volume to the total volume of gas-air mixture discharged will not exceed 0.2 percent.

6.8.7 Atmospheric Vents and Gas Reliefs or Bleeds. Direct make-up air heaters with valve train components equipped with atmospheric vents or gas reliefs or bleeds shall have their atmospheric vent lines or gas reliefs or bleeds lead to a safe point outdoors. Means shall be employed on these lines to prevent water from entering and to prevent blockage by insects and foreign matter. An atmospheric vent line shall not be required to be provided on a valve train component equipped with a listed vent limiter.

6.8.8 Relief Opening. The design of the installation shall include provision to permit make-up air heaters to operate at rated capacity by taking into account the structure's designed infiltration rate, providing properly designed relief openings or an interlocked power exhaust system, or a combination of these methods.

(a) The structure's designed infiltration rate and the size of relief openings shall be determined by approved engineering methods.

(b) Relief openings shall be permitted to be louvers or counterbalanced gravity dampers. Motorized dampers or closable louvers shall be permitted to be used, provided they are verified to be in their full open position prior to main burner operation.

6.8.9 Purging. The blower of an unlisted direct make-up heater and the exhaust system shall be operated to effect at least four air changes of the combustion chamber before the gas to the main burners is ignited.

6.9 Industrial Air Heaters.

6.9.1 Application.

(a) Listed direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall be listed in accordance with *Direct Gas-Fired Industrial Air Heaters*, ANSI Z83.18.

(b) Unlisted direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall not be installed.

Exception: Unlisted equipment shall be permitted to be installed where approved by the authority having jurisdiction and a site-specific equipment evaluation is performed by an independent testing agency, based on the applicable requirements of Direct Gas-Fired Industrial Air Heaters, ANSI Z83.18.

6.9.2 Prohibited Installations. Direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall not use recirculation of room air in buildings that contain flammable solids, liquids, or gases, explosive materials, or substances that may become toxic when exposed to flame.

6.9.3 Installation.

(a) Direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall be installed only in industrial or commercial occupancies.

(b) Direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall be permitted to provide fresh air ventilation.

(c) Direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall not be installed in any area containing sleeping quarters.

6.9.4 Clearance from Combustible Materials.

(a) Listed direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall be installed with a clearance from combustible material of not less than that shown on the marking plate and in the manufacturers' instructions.

(b) Clearances to combustible materials for unlisted direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall be determined to be acceptable during evaluation testing. [See 6.9.1(b).]

6.9.5 Air Supply. Air to direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall be taken from the building, ducted directly from outdoors, or a combination of both.

(a) Direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall incorporate a means to supply outside ventilation air to the space at a rate of not less than 4 cfm per 1,000 Btu per hour (0.38 m^3 per min per kw) of rated input of the heater. If a separate means is used to supply ventilation air, an interlock shall be provided so as to lock out the main burner operation until the mechanical means is verified.

(b) If outside air dampers or closing louvers are used, they shall be verified to be in the open position prior to main burner operation.

NOTE: Recirculation of room air may be hazardous in the presence of flammable solids, liquids, and gases, explosive materials (e.g., grain dust, coal dust, gun powder), and substances that may become toxic when exposed to flame (e.g., refrigerants, aerosols, etc.)

6.9.6 Atmospheric Vents or Gas Reliefs or Bleeds. Direct gas-fired industrial air heaters with valve train components equipped with atmospheric vents gas reliefs or bleeds shall have their atmospheric vent lines and gas reliefs or bleeds lead to a safe point outdoors.

Means shall be employed on these lines to prevent water from entering and to prevent blockage by insects and foreign matter. An atmospheric vent line shall not be required to be provided on a valve train component equipped with a listed vent limiter.

6.9.7 Relief Opening. The design of the installation shall include adequate provision to permit direct gas-fired industrial air heaters to operate at rated capacity by taking into account the structure's designed infiltration rate, providing properly designed relief openings or an interlocked power exhaust system, or a combination of these methods.

(a) The structure's designed infiltration rate and the size of relief openings shall be determined by approved engineering methods.

(b) Relief openings shall be permitted to be louvers or counterbalanced gravity dampers. Motorized dampers or closable louvers shall be permitted to be used, provided they are verified to be in their full open position prior to main burner operation.

6.10 Duct Furnaces.

6.10.1 Clearances.

(a) Listed duct furnaces shall be installed with clearances of at least 6 inches (15 cm) between adjacent walls, ceilings, and floors of combustible material and the furnace draft hood, except that furnaces listed for installation at lesser clearances may be installed in accordance with their listings. In no case shall the clearance be such as to interfere with combustion air and accessibility. (*See 5.2.1 and Section 5.3.*)

(b) Unlisted duct furnaces shall be installed with clearances to combustible material in accordance with the clearances specified for unlisted furnaces and boilers in Table V. Combustible floors under unlisted duct furnaces shall be protected in an approved manner.

6.10.2 Erection of Equipment. Duct furnaces shall be erected and firmly supported in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions.

6.10.3 Access Panels. The ducts connected to duct furnaces shall have removable access panels on both the upstream and downstream sides of the furnace.

6.10.4 Location of Draft Hood and Controls. The controls, combustion air inlet, and draft hoods for duct furnaces shall be located outside the ducts. The draft hood shall be located in the same enclosure from which combustion air is taken.

6.10.5 Circulating Air. Where a duct furnace is installed so that supply ducts carry air circulated by the furnace to areas outside the space containing the furnace, the return air shall also be handled by a duct(s) sealed to the furnace casing and terminating outside the space containing the furnace.

If the duct furnace is connected to a return air duct or any other inlet air restriction, the furnace shall be installed on the positive pressure side of the circulating air blower.

6.10.6 Duct Furnaces Used with Refrigeration Systems.

(a) A duct furnace shall not be installed in conjunction with a refrigeration coil when circulation of cooled air is provided by the blower, unless the blower has sufficient capacity to overcome the external static resistance imposed by the duct system, furnace, and the cooling coil at the air throughput necessary for heating or cooling, whichever is greater.

(b) Duct furnaces used in conjunction with cooling equipment shall be installed in parallel with or on the upstream side of cooling coils to avoid condensation within heating elements, unless the duct furnace has been specifically listed for downstream installation. With a parallel flow arrangement, the dampers or other means used to control the flow of air shall be sufficiently tight to prevent any circulation of cooled air through the unit.

(c) Where duct furnaces are to be located upstream from cooling units, the cooling unit shall be so designed or equipped as to not develop excessive temperatures or pressures.

(d) Duct furnaces shall be permitted to be installed downstream from evaporative coolers or air washers if the heating element is made of corrosion-resistant material. Stainless steel, ceramic-coated steel, or an aluminum-coated steel in which the bond between the steel and the aluminum is an iron-aluminum alloy are considered to be corrosion-resistant. Air washers operating with chilled water that deliver air below the dew point of the ambient air at the equipment are considered as refrigeration systems.

6.10.7 Installation in Commercial Garages and Aircraft Hangars. Duct furnaces installed in garages for more than three motor vehicles or in aircraft hangars shall be of a listed type and shall be installed in accordance with 5.1.10 and 5.1.11.

6.11 Floor Furnaces.

6.11.1 Installation.

(a) Listed floor furnaces shall be permitted to be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturers' instructions.

(b) Unlisted floor furnaces shall not be installed in combustible floors.

(c) Thermostats controlling floor furnaces shall not be located in a room or space that can be separated from the room or space in that the register of the floor furnace is located.

6.11.2 Temperature Limit Controls.

(a) Listed automatically operated floor furnaces shall be equipped with temperature limit controls in accordance with the terms of their listing.

(b) Unlisted automatically operated floor furnaces shall be equipped with a temperature limit control arranged to shut off the flow of gas to the burner in the event the temperature at the warm air outlet register exceeds 350°F (177°C) above room temperature.

6.11.3 Combustion and Circulating Air. Combustion and circulating air shall be provided in accordance with Section 5.3.

6.11.4 Placement. The following provisions apply to furnaces that serve one story.

(a) *Floors.* Floor furnaces shall not be installed in the floor of any doorway, stairway landing, aisle, or passageway of any enclosure, public or private, or in an exitway from any such room or space.

(b) *Walls and Corners.* The register of a floor furnace with a horizontal warm air outlet shall not be placed closer than 6 inches (15 cm) to the nearest wall. A distance of at least 18 inches (46 cm) from two adjoining sides of the floor furnace register to walls shall be provided to eliminate the necessity of occupants walking over the warm air discharge. The remaining sides shall be permitted to be placed not closer than 6 inches (15 cm) to a wall. Wall-register models shall not be placed closer than 6 inches (15 cm) to a corner.

(c) *Draperies.* The furnace shall be placed so that a door, drapery, or similar object cannot be nearer than 12 inches (30 cm) to any portion of the register of the furnace.

6.11.5 Bracing. The space provided for the furnace shall be framed with doubled joists and with headers not lighter than the joists.

6.11.6 Support. Means shall be provided to support the furnace when the floor register is removed.

6.11.7 Clearance. The lowest portion of the floor furnace shall have at least a 6-inch (15-cm) clearance from the general ground level. Where these clearances are not present, the ground below and to the sides shall be excavated to form a “basin-like” pit under the furnace so that the required clearance is provided beneath the lowest portion of the furnace. A 12-inch (30-cm) clearance shall be provided on all sides except the control side, which shall have an 18-inch (46-cm) clearance.

Exception: Where the lower 6-inch (15-cm) portion of the floor furnace is sealed by the manufacturer to prevent entrance of water, the clearance shall be permitted to be reduced to not less than 2 inches (5 cm).

6.11.8 Access. The space in which any floor furnace is installed shall be accessible by an opening in the foundation not less than 24 by 18 inches (60 by 46 cm), or a trap door not less than 24 by 24 inches (60 by 60 cm) in any cross section thereof, and a passageway not less than 24 by 18 inches (60 by 46 cm) in any cross section thereof.

6.11.9 Seepage Pan. Where the excavation exceeds 12 inches (30 cm) in depth or water seepage is likely to collect, a watertight copper pan, concrete pit, or other suitable material shall be used, unless adequate drainage is provided or the equipment is sealed by the manufacturer to meet this condition. A copper pan shall be made of not less than 16-ounce-per-square-foot (4.9-kg-per-m²) sheet copper. The pan shall be anchored in place so as to prevent floating, and the walls shall extend at least 4 inches (10 cm) above the ground level with at least 6 inches (15 cm) clearance on all sides, except the control side, which shall have at least 18 inches (46 cm) clearance.

6.11.10 Wind Protection. Floor furnaces shall be protected, where necessary, against severe wind conditions.

6.11.11 Upper Floor Installations. Listed floor furnaces shall be permitted to be installed in an upper floor, provided the furnace assembly projects below into a utility room, closet, garage, or similar nonhabitable space. In such installations, the floor furnace shall be enclosed completely (entirely separated from the nonhabitable space) with means for air intake to meet the provisions of Section 5.3, with access for servicing, the minimum furnace clearances of 6 inches (15 cm) to all sides and bottom, and with the enclosure constructed of portland cement plaster or metal lath or other noncombustible material.

6.11.12 First Floor Installation. Listed floor furnaces installed in the first or ground floors of buildings shall not be required to be enclosed unless the basements of these buildings have been converted to apartments or sleeping quarters, in which case the floor furnace shall be enclosed as specified for upper floor installations and shall project into a nonhabitable space.

6.12 Food Service Equipment, Floor Mounted.

6.12.1 Clearance for Listed Equipment. Listed floor-mounted food service equipment, such as ranges for hotels and restaurants, deep fat fryers, unit broilers, gas-fired kettles, steam cookers, steam generators,

and baking and roasting ovens, shall be installed at least 6 inches (15 cm) from combustible material except that at least a 2-inch (5-cm) clearance shall be maintained between a draft hood and combustible material. Floor-mounted food service equipment listed for installation at lesser clearances shall be permitted to be installed in accordance with its listing and the manufacturers' instructions. Equipment designed and marked "For use only in noncombustible locations" shall not be installed elsewhere.

6.12.2 Clearance for Unlisted Equipment. Unlisted floor-mounted food service equipment shall be installed to provide a clearance to combustible material of not less than 18 inches (46 cm) at the sides and rear of the equipment and from the vent connector and not less than 48 inches (1.2 m) above cooking tops and at the front of the equipment.

Exception No. 1: Unlisted floor-mounted food service equipment shall be permitted to be installed in rooms, but not in partially enclosed areas such as alcoves, with reduced clearances to combustible material, provided the combustible material or the equipment is protected as described in Table VI.

Exception No. 2: Unlisted floor-mounted food service equipment shall be permitted to be installed in rooms, but not in partially enclosed areas such as alcoves, with reduced clearance of 6 inches (15 cm) to combustible material, provided the wall or combustible material is protected by sheet metal not less than 0.0152 inch (0.4 mm) thick, fastened with noncombustible spacers that are spaced at not less than 2-foot (0.6-m) vertical and horizontal intervals to provide a clearance of 1½ inches (3.8 cm) from such wall or material. Such protection shall extend at least 12 inches (30 cm) beyond the back, side, top, or any other part of the equipment, and the space between the sheet metal and wall or combustible material shall be open on both sides and top and bottom to permit circulation of air.*

6.12.3 Mounting On Combustible Floor.

(a) Listed floor-mounted food service equipment that is listed specifically for installation on floors constructed of combustible material shall be permitted to be mounted on combustible floors in accordance with its listing and the manufacturers' instructions.

(b) Floor-mounted food service equipment that is not listed for mounting on a combustible floor shall be mounted in accordance with 6.12.4 or be mounted in accordance with one of the following:

1. Where the equipment is set on legs that provide not less than 18 inches (46 cm) open space under the base of the equipment, or where it has no burners and no portion of any oven or broiler within 18 inches (46 cm) of the floor, it shall be permitted to be mounted on a combustible floor without special floor protection, provided there is at least one sheet metal baffle between the burner and the floor.

2. Where the equipment is set on legs that provide not less than 8 inches (20 cm) open space under the base of the equipment, it shall be permitted to be mounted on combustible floors, provided the floor under the equipment is protected with not less than $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch (9.5-mm) insulating millboard covered with sheet metal not less than 0.0195 inch (0.5 mm) thick. The above specified floor protection shall extend not less than 6 inches (15 cm) beyond the equipment on all sides.

3. Where the equipment is set on legs that provide not less than 4 inches (10 cm) under the base of the equipment, it shall be permitted to be mounted on combustible floors, provided the floor under the equipment is protected with hollow masonry not less than 4 inches (10 cm) in thickness covered with sheet metal not less than 0.0195 inch (0.5 mm) thick. Such masonry courses shall be laid with ends unsealed and joints matched in such a way as to provide for free circulation of air through the masonry.

4. Where the equipment does not have legs at least 4 inches (10 cm) high, it shall be permitted to be mounted on combustible floors, provided the floor under the equipment is protected by two courses of 4-inch (10-cm) hollow clay tile, or equivalent, with courses laid at right angles and with ends unsealed and joints matched in such a way as to provide for free circulation of air through such masonry courses, and covered with steel plate not less than $\frac{3}{16}$ inch (4.8 mm) in thickness.

6.12.4 Mounting on Noncombustible Floor. Listed floor-mounted food service equipment that is designed and marked "For use only in non-combustible locations" shall be mounted on floors of noncombustible construction with noncombustible flooring and surface finish and with no combustible material against the underside thereof, or on noncombustible slabs or arches having no combustible material against the underside thereof. Such construction shall in all cases extend not less than 12 inches (30 cm) beyond the equipment on all sides.

6.12.5 Combustible Material Adjacent to Cooking Top. Any portion of combustible material adjacent to a cooking top section of a food service range, even though listed for close-to-wall installation, that is not shielded from the wall by a high shelf, warming closet, etc., shall be protected as specified in 6.12.2 for a distance of at least 2 feet (61 cm) above the surface of the cooking top.

6.12.6 For Use With Casters. Floor-mounted equipment with casters shall be listed for such construction and shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the accompanying instructions for limiting the movement of the equipment to prevent strain on the connection.

6.12.7 Install Level. Floor-mounted food service equipment shall be installed level on a firm foundation.

6.12.8 Ventilation. Means shall be provided to properly ventilate the space in which food service equipment is installed to permit proper combustion of the gas. Where exhaust fans are used for ventilation, precautions may be necessary to avoid interference with the operation of the equipment.

6.13 Food Service Equipment Counter Appliances.

6.13.1 Vertical Clearance. A vertical distance of not less than 48 inches (1.2 m) shall be provided between the top of all food service hot plates and griddles and combustible material.

6.13.2 Clearance for Listed Appliances. Listed food service counter appliances such as hot plates and griddles, food and dish warmers, and coffee brewers and urns, where installed on combustible surfaces, shall be set on their own bases or legs and shall be installed with a minimum horizontal clearance of 6 inches (15 cm) from combustible material, except that at least a 2-inch (5-cm) clearance shall be maintained between a draft hood and combustible material. Food service counter appliances listed for installation at lesser clearances shall be permitted to be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturers' instructions.

6.13.3 Clearance for Unlisted Appliances. Unlisted food service hot plates and griddles shall be installed with a horizontal clearance from combustible material of not less than 18 inches (46 cm). Unlisted gas food service counter appliances, including coffee brewers and urns, waffle bakers, and hot water immersion sterilizers, shall be installed with a horizontal clearance from combustible material of not less than 12 inches (30 cm). Gas food service counter appliances shall be permitted to be installed with reduced clearances to combustible material provided as described in Table VI. Unlisted food and dish warmers shall be installed with a horizontal clearance from combustible material of not less than 6 inches (15 cm).

6.13.4 Mounting of Unlisted Appliances. Unlisted food service counter appliances shall not be set on combustible material unless they have legs that provide not less than 4 inches (10 cm) of open space below the burners and the combustible surface is protected with insulating mill-board at least $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) thick covered with sheet metal not less than 0.0122 inch (0.3 mm) thick, or with equivalent protection.

6.14 Hot Plates and Laundry Stoves.

(a) Listed domestic hot plates and laundry stoves installed on combustible surfaces shall be set on their own legs or bases. They shall be installed with minimum horizontal clearances of 6 inches (15 cm) from combustible material.

(b) Unlisted domestic hot plates and laundry stoves shall be installed with horizontal clearances to combustible material of not less than 12 inches (30 cm). Combustible surfaces under unlisted domestic hot plates and laundry stoves shall be protected in an approved manner.

(c) The vertical distance between tops of all domestic hot plates and laundry stoves and combustible material shall be at least 30 inches (76 cm).

6.15 Household Cooking Appliances.

6.15.1 Floor-Mounted Units.

(a) *Clearance from Combustible Material.* The clearances specified below shall not interfere with combustion air, accessibility for operation, and servicing.

1. Listed floor-mounted household cooking appliances, when installed on combustible floors, shall be set on their own bases or legs and shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturers' instructions.

Exception No. 1: Listed household cooking appliances with listed gas room heater sections shall be installed so that the warm air discharge side shall have a minimum clearance of 18 inches (46 cm) from adjacent combustible material. A minimum clearance of 36 inches (91 cm) shall be provided between the top of the heater section and the bottom of cabinets.

Exception No. 2: Household cooking appliances that include a solid or liquid fuel burning section shall be spaced from combustible material and otherwise installed in accordance with the standards applying to the supplementary fuel section of the appliance.

2. Unlisted floor-mounted household cooking appliances shall be installed with at least 6-inch (15-cm) clearance at the back and sides to combustible material. Combustible floors under unlisted appliances shall be protected in an approved manner.

(b) *Vertical Clearance Above Cooking Top.* Household cooking appliances shall have a vertical clearance above the cooking top of not less than 30 inches (76 cm) to combustible material or metal cabinets.

Exception: The clearance shall be permitted to be reduced to not less than 24 inches (61 cm) as follows:

1. *The underside of the combustible material or metal cabinet above the cooking top is protected with not less than 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) insulating millboard covered with sheet metal not less than 0.0122 inch (0.3 mm) thick, or*

2. *A metal ventilating hood of sheet metal not less than 0.0122 inch (0.3 mm) thick is installed above the cooking top with a clearance of not less than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) between the hood and the underside of the combustible material or metal cabinet, and the hood is at least as wide as the appliance and is centered over the appliance.*

3. *Installation of a listed cooking appliance or microwave oven over a listed cooking appliance shall conform to the terms of the upper appliance's listing and the manufacturers' instructions.*

(c) *Install Level.* Cooking appliances shall be installed so that the cooking top or oven racks are level.

6.15.2 Built-In Units.

(a) *Installation.* Listed built-in household cooking appliances shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturers' instructions. Listed built-in household cooking appliances shall be permitted to be installed in combustible material unless otherwise marked.

The installation shall not interfere with combustion air, accessibility for operation, and servicing.

Unlisted built-in household cooking appliances shall not be installed in, or adjacent to, combustible material.

(b) *Vertical Clearance.* Built-in top (or surface) cooking appliances shall have a vertical clearance above the cooking top of not less than 30 inches (76 cm) to combustible material or metal cabinets.

Exception: The clearance shall be permitted to be reduced to not less than 24 inches (61 cm) as follows:

1. *The underside of the combustible material or metal cabinet above the cooking top is protected with not less than 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) insulating millboard covered with sheet metal not less than 0.0122 inch (0.3 mm) thick, or*

2. *A metal ventilating hood of sheet metal not less than 0.0122 inch (0.3 mm) thick is installed above the cooking top with a clearance of not less than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) between the hood and the underside of the combustible material or metal cabinet, and the hood is at least as wide as the appliance and is centered over the appliance.*

3. *Installation of a listed cooking appliance or microwave oven over a listed cooking appliance shall conform to the terms of the upper appliance's listing and the manufacturers' instructions.*

(c) *Horizontal Clearance.* The minimum horizontal distance from the center of the burner head(s) of a listed top (or surface) cooking appliance to vertical combustible walls extending above the top panel shall be not less than that distance specified by the permanent marking on the appliance.

(d) *Install Level.* Built-in household cooking appliances shall be installed so that the cooking top, broiler pan, or oven racks are level.

6.16 Illuminating Appliances.

6.16.1 Clearances for Listed Appliances. Listed illuminating appliances shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturers' instructions.

6.16.2 Clearances for Unlisted Appliances.

(a) Enclosed Type.

1. Unlisted enclosed illuminating appliances installed outdoors shall be installed with clearances in any direction from combustible material of not less than 12 inches (30 cm).

2. Unlisted enclosed illuminating appliances installed indoors shall be installed with clearances in any direction from combustible material of not less than 18 inches (46 cm).

(b) Open-Flame Type.

1. Unlisted open-flame illuminating appliances installed outdoors shall have clearances from combustible material not less than that specified in Table VIII. The distance from ground level to the base of the burner shall be at least 7 feet (2 m) where installed within 2 feet (0.6 m) of walkways. Lesser clearances shall be permitted to be used when acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

2. Unlisted open-flame illuminating appliances installed outdoors shall be equipped with a limiting orifice or other limiting devices, which will maintain a flame height consistent with the clearance from combustible material, as given in Table VIII.

3. Appliances designed for flame heights in excess of 30 inches (76 cm) may be installed if acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction. Such appliances shall be equipped with a safety shutoff device or automatic ignition.

4. Unlisted open-flame illuminating appliances installed indoors shall have clearances from combustible material acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

Table VIII Clearances for Unlisted Outdoor Open-Flame Illuminating Appliances

Flame Height Above Burner Head, Inches	Minimum Clearance from Combustible Material, Feet*	
	Horizontal	Vertical
12	2	6
18	3	8
24	3	10
30	4	12

For SI units: 1 inch = 2.54 cm; 1 foot = 0.305 m

* Measured from the nearest portion of the burner head.

6.16.3 Mounting on Buildings. Illuminating appliances designed for wall or ceiling mounting shall be securely attached to substantial structures in such a manner that they are not dependent on the gas piping for support.

6.16.4 Mounting on Posts. Illuminating appliances designed for post mounting shall be securely and rigidly attached to a post.

Posts shall be rigidly mounted. The strength and rigidity of posts greater than 3 feet (0.9 m) in height shall be at least equivalent to that of a 2½-inch (6.4-cm) diameter post constructed of 0.064-inch (1.6-mm) thick steel or a 1-inch Schedule 40 steel pipe. Posts 3 feet (0.9 m) or less in height shall not be smaller than a ¾-inch Schedule 40 steel pipe.

Drain openings shall be provided near the base of posts where there is a possibility of water collecting inside them.

6.16.5 Gas Appliance Pressure Regulators. Where a gas appliance pressure regulator is not supplied with an illuminating appliance and the service line is not equipped with a service pressure regulator, an appliance pressure regulator shall be installed in the line to the illuminating appliance. For multiple installations, one regulator of adequate capacity shall be permitted to be used to serve more than one illuminating appliance.

6.17 Incinerators, Commercial-Industrial. Commercial-industrial type incinerators shall be constructed and installed in accordance with *Standard on Incinerators, Waste, and Linen Handling Systems and Equipment*, ANSI/NFPA 82.

6.18 Incinerators, Domestic.

6.18.1 Clearance.

(a) Listed incinerators shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturers' instructions, provided that, in any case, the clearance shall be sufficient to afford ready accessibility for firing, cleanout, and necessary servicing.

(b) The clearances to combustible material above a charging door shall be not less than 48 inches (122 cm).

Exception No. 1: The clearance shall be permitted to be reduced to 24 inches (61 cm), provided the combustible material is protected with sheet metal not less than 0.0122 inch (0.3 mm) thick, spaced out 1 inch (2.5 cm) on noncombustible spacers or equivalent, protection. Such protection shall extend 18 inches (46 cm) beyond all sides of the charging door opening.

Exception No. 2: Listed incinerators designed to retain the flame during loading need not comply with this paragraph.

(c) Unlisted incinerators shall be installed with clearances to combustible material of not less than 36 inches (92 cm) at the sides, top, and back and not less than 48 inches (1.2 m) at the front, but in no case shall the clearance above a charging door be less than 48 inches (1.2 m). Unlisted wall-mounted incinerators shall be installed on a noncombustible wall communicating directly with a chimney.

(d) Domestic type incinerators shall be permitted to be installed with reduced clearances to combustible material in rooms, provided the combustible material is protected as described in Table VI.

Exception: In partially enclosed areas, such as alcoves, clearances shall not be so reduced.

(e) Where a domestic type incinerator that is refractory lined or insulated with heat insulating material is encased in common brick not less than 4 inches (10 cm) in thickness, the clearances shall be permitted to be reduced to 6 inches (15 cm) at the sides and rear, and the clearance at the top shall be permitted to be reduced to 24 inches (61 cm), provided that the construction using combustible material above the charging door and within 48 inches (122 cm) is protected with sheet metal not less than 0.0122 inch (0.3 mm) thick, spaced out 1 inch (2.5 cm), or equivalent protection.

6.18.2 Mounting.

(a) Listed incinerators specifically listed for installation on combustible floors shall be permitted to be so installed.

(b) Unlisted incinerators shall be mounted on the ground or on floors of noncombustible construction with noncombustible flooring or surface finish and with no combustible material against the underside thereof, or on noncombustible slabs or arches having no combustible material against the underside thereof. Such construction shall extend not less than 12 inches (30 cm) beyond the incinerator base on all sides, except at the front or side where ashes are removed, where it shall extend not less than 18 inches (46 cm) beyond the incinerator.

Exception No. 1: Unlisted incinerators shall be permitted to be mounted on floors other than as specified in 6.18.2(b), provided the incinerator is so arranged that flame or hot gases do not come in contact with its base and, further, provided the floor under the incinerator is protected with hollow masonry not less than 4 inches (10 cm) thick, covered with sheet metal not less than 0.0195 inch (0.5 mm) thick. Such masonry course shall be laid with ends unsealed and joints matched in such a way as to provide a free circulation of air from side to side through the masonry. The floor for 18 inches (46 cm) beyond the front of the incinerator or side where ashes are removed, and 12 inches (30 cm) beyond all other sides of the incinerator, shall be protected with not less than 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) insulating mill-board covered with sheet metal not less than 0.0195 inch (0.5 mm) thick, or with equivalent protection.

Exception No. 2: Unlisted incinerators that are set on legs that provide not less than 4 inches (10 cm) open space under the base of the incinerator shall be permitted to be mounted on floors other than as specified in 6.18.2(b), provided the incinerator is such that flame or hot gases do not come in contact with its base and, further, provided the floor under the incinerator is protected with not less than 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) insulating mill-board covered with sheet metal not less than 0.0195 inch (0.5 mm) thick. The above specified floor protection shall extend not less than 18 inches (46 cm) beyond the front of the incinerator or side where ashes are removed and 12 inches (30 cm) beyond all other sides of the incinerator.

6.18.3 Draft Hood Prohibited. A draft hood shall not be installed in the vent connector of an incinerator.

6.18.4 Venting. Incinerators shall be vented in accordance with Sections 7.4, 7.5, 7.7, and 7.10.

6.19 Infrared Heaters.

6.19.1 Support. Suspended type infrared heaters shall be fixed in position independent of gas and electric supply lines. Hangers and brackets shall be of noncombustible material.

Heaters subject to vibration shall be provided with vibration isolating hangers.

6.19.2 Clearance.

(a) Listed heaters shall be installed with clearances from combustible material in accordance with their listing and the manufacturers' instructions.

(b) Unlisted heaters shall be installed in accordance with clearances from combustible material acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

(c) In locations used for the storage of combustible materials, signs shall be posted to specify the maximum permissible stacking height to maintain required clearances from the heater to the combustibles.

6.19.3 Combustion and Ventilation Air.

(a) Where unvented infrared heaters are used, natural or mechanical means shall be provided to supply and exhaust at least 4 cfm per 1,000 Btu per hour (0.38 m^3 per min per kw) input of installed heaters.

(b) Exhaust openings for removing flue products shall be above the level of the heaters.

6.19.4 Installation in Commercial Garages and Aircraft Hangars.

Overhead heaters installed in garages for more than three motor vehicles or in aircraft hangars shall be of a listed type and shall be installed in accordance with 5.1.10 and 5.1.11.

6.20 Open Top Broiler Units.

6.20.1 Listed Units. Listed open top broiler units shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturers' instructions.

6.20.2 Unlisted Units. Unlisted open top broiler units shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions, but shall not be installed in combustible material.

6.20.3 Protection Above Domestic Units. Domestic open top broiler units shall be provided with a metal ventilating hood not less than 0.0122 inch (0.3 mm) thick with a clearance of not less than $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) between the hood and the underside of combustible material or metal cabinets. A clearance of at least 24 inches (61 cm) shall be maintained between the cooking top and the combustible material or metal cabinet, and the hood shall be at least as wide as the open top broiler unit and centered over the unit. Listed domestic open top broiler units incorporating an integral exhaust system and listed for use without a ventilating hood need not be provided with a ventilating hood if installed in accordance with 6.15.1(b)1.

6.20.4 Commercial Units. Commercial open top broiler units shall be provided with ventilation in accordance with *Standard for the Installation of Equipment for the Removal of Smoke and Grease-Laden Vapors from Commercial Cooking Equipment*, ANSI/NFPA 96.

6.21 Outdoor Cooking Appliances.

6.21.1 Listed Units. Listed outdoor cooking appliances shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturers' instructions.

6.21.2 Unlisted Units. Unlisted outdoor cooking appliances shall be installed outdoors with clearances to combustible material of not less than 36 inches (91 cm) at the sides and back and not less than 48 inches (122 cm) at the front. In no case shall the appliance be located under overhead combustible construction.

6.22 Pool Heaters.

6.22.1 Location. A pool heater shall be located or protected so as to minimize accidental contact of hot surfaces by persons.

6.22.2 Clearance.

(a) In no case shall the clearances be such as to interfere with combustion air, draft hood or vent terminal clearance and relief, and accessibility for servicing.

(b) A listed pool heater shall be installed in accordance with its listing and the manufacturers' instructions.

(c) An unlisted pool heater shall be installed with a minimum clearance of 12 inches (30 cm) on all sides and the rear. A combustible floor under an unlisted pool heater shall be protected in an approved manner.

6.22.3 Temperature or Pressure Limiting Devices.

(a) An unlisted pool heater shall be provided with overtemperature protection or overtemperature and overpressure protection by means of an approved device(s).

(b) When a pool heater is provided with overtemperature protection only, and is installed with any device in the discharge line of the heater that can restrict the flow of water from the heater to the pool (such as a check valve, shutoff valve, therapeutic pool valving, or flow nozzles), a pressure relief valve shall be installed either in the heater or between the heater and the restrictive device.

6.22.4 Bypass Valves. If an integral bypass system is not provided as a part of the pool heater, a bypass line and valve shall be installed between the inlet and outlet piping for use in adjusting the flow of water through the heater.

6.22.5 Venting. A pool heater listed for outdoor installation shall be installed with the venting means supplied by the manufacturer and in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions. (*See 7.2.5, 7.2.6, 7.3.4, and Section 7.8.*)

6.23 Refrigerators.

6.23.1 Clearance. Refrigerators shall be provided with clearances for ventilation at the top and back in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions. If such instructions are not available, at least 2 inches (5 cm) shall be provided between the back of the refrigerator and the wall and at least 12 inches (30 cm) above the top.

6.23.2 Venting or Ventilating Kits Approved for Use with a Refrigerator.

If an accessory kit is used for conveying air for burner combustion or unit cooling to the refrigerator from areas outside the room in which it is located, or for conveying combustion products diluted with air containing waste heat from the refrigerator to areas outside the room in which it is located, the kit shall be installed in accordance with the refrigerator manufacturers' instructions.

6.24 Room Heaters.

6.24.1* Prohibited Installations. Unvented room heaters shall not be installed in bathrooms or bedrooms.

6.24.2 Installations in Institutions. Room heaters shall not be installed in institutions such as homes for the aged, sanitariums, convalescent homes, orphanages, etc.

6.24.3 Clearance. A room heater shall be placed so as not to cause a hazard to walls, floors, curtains, furniture, doors when open, etc., and to the free movements of persons within the room. Heaters designed and marked "For use in noncombustible fireplace only" shall not be installed elsewhere. Listed room heaters shall be installed in accordance with their listings and the manufacturers' instructions. In no case shall the clearances be such as to interfere with combustion air and accessibility.

Unlisted room heaters shall be installed with clearances from combustible material not less than the following:

(a) *Circulating Type.* Room heaters having an outer jacket surrounding the combustion chamber, arranged with openings at top and bottom so that air circulates between the inner and outer jacket, and without openings in the outer jacket to permit direct radiation, shall have clearance at sides and rear of not less than 12 inches (30 cm).

(b) *Radiating Type.* Room heaters other than those described above as of circulating type shall have clearance at sides and rear of not less than 18 inches (46 cm); except that heaters that make use of metal, asbestos, or ceramic material to direct radiation to the front of the heater shall have a clearance of 36 inches (91 cm) in front and, if constructed with a double back of metal or ceramic, shall be permitted to be installed with a clearance of 18 inches (46 cm) at sides and 12 inches (30 cm) at rear. Combustible floors under unlisted room heaters shall be protected in an approved manner.

6.24.4 Wall-Type Room Heaters. Wall-type room heaters shall not be installed in or attached to walls of combustible material unless listed for such installation.

6.25 Sauna Heaters.

6.25.1 Location and Protection.

(a) A sauna heater shall be so located as to minimize the possibility of accidental contact by a person in the room.

(b) A sauna heater shall be protected from accidental contact by a guard or barrier of material having a low coefficient of thermal conductivity. Wood shall be satisfactory for this application. The guard shall have no substantial effect on the transfer of heat from the heater to the room.

6.25.2 Installation of Heater.

(a) A listed sauna heater shall be installed in accordance with its listing and the manufacturers' instructions.

(b) An unlisted sauna heater shall be installed in accordance with the following:

1. The heater shall be installed on noncombustible flooring or on flooring that has been equivalently protected in an approved manner.

2. The heater shall be installed in compliance with the manufacturers' instructions, except that clearances to the sides, back, and top of the heater shall be not less than 36 inches (91 cm).

(c) An unlisted sauna heater shall not be installed in or attached to combustible material.

(d) A direct vent sauna heater shall be installed with the vent/air intake terminal in the outside atmosphere. The thickness of the wall on which the heater is mounted shall be within the range of wall thicknesses marked on the heater and covered in the manufacturers' installation instructions.

(e) Panels, grilles, and access doors that must be removed for normal servicing operations shall not be attached to the building.

(f) A sauna heater of other than the direct vent type shall be installed generally in accordance with Figure 9. If the combustion air inlet and the draft hood are in a dressing room adjacent to the sauna room, there shall be provisions to physically prevent blocking the combustion air inlet and the draft hood inlet, and to prevent physical contact with the draft hood and vent assembly, or warning notices shall be posted to avoid such contact. Any warning notice shall be easily readable, shall contrast with its background, and the wording shall be in letters not less than $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) high.

6.25.3 Connection. The provisions of Section 5.5 shall be followed except that, where access to controls is from an adjacent room, connections shall be made in that room.

6.25.4 Combustion and Ventilation Air.

(a) Combustion air shall not be taken from inside the sauna room.

(b) Combustion and ventilation air for a heater not of the direct vent type shall be provided to the area in which the combustion air inlet and draft hood are located by suitable means. (*See Section 5.3.*)

6.25.5 Means for Heat or Exposure Limitation.

(a) A sauna heater shall be equipped with a thermostat that limits room temperature to 194°F (90°C). If the thermostat is not an integral part of the heater, the heat sensing element shall be located within 6 inches (15 cm) of the ceiling. If the heat sensing element is a capillary tube and bulb, the assembly shall be attached to the wall or other support and shall be protected against physical damage.

(b) A timer, if provided to control main burner operation, shall have a maximum operating time of 1 hour. The control for the timer shall be located outside the sauna room.

6.26 Stationary Gas Engines. The installation of gas engines shall conform with *Standard for the Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines*, ANSI/NFPA 37.

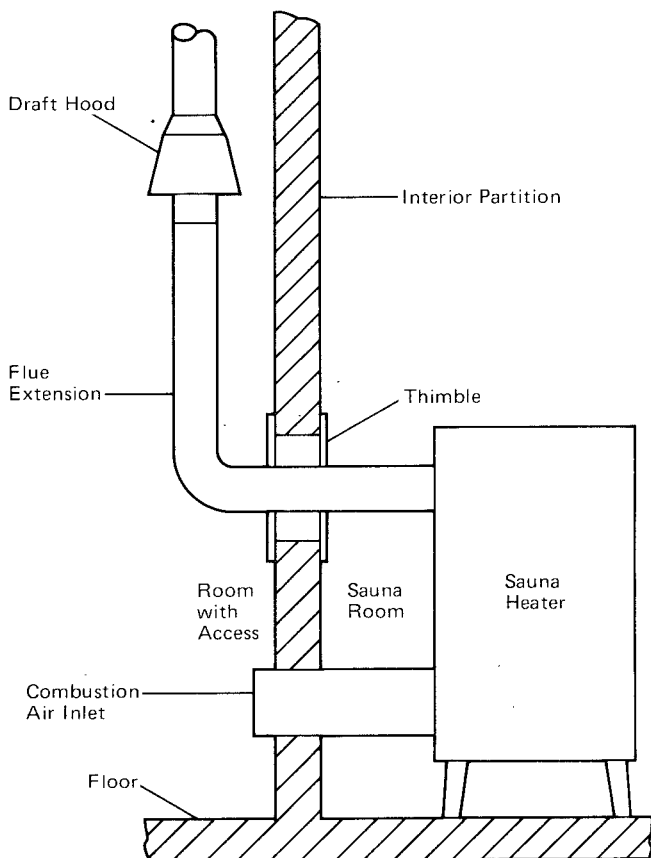


Figure 9. Typical Sauna Heater Installation.

6.27 Gas-Fired Toilets.

6.27.1 Clearance. A listed gas-fired toilet shall be installed in accordance with its listing and the manufacturers' instructions, provided that the clearance shall in any case be sufficient to afford ready accessibility for use, cleanout, and necessary servicing.

6.27.2 Mounting. Listed gas-fired toilets specifically listed for installation on combustible floors shall be permitted to be so installed.

6.27.3 Installation. Vents or vent connectors that are located so they could be contacted during casual use of the room in which the toilet is installed shall be protected or shielded to prevent such contact.

6.28 Unit Heaters.

6.28.1 Support. Suspended type unit heaters shall be safely and adequately supported with due consideration given to their weight and vibration characteristics. Hangers and brackets shall be of noncombustible material.

6.28.2 Clearance.

(a) Suspended Type Unit Heaters.

1. A listed unit heater shall be installed with clearances from combustible material of not less than 18 inches (46 cm) at the sides, 12 inches (30 cm) at the bottom, and 6 inches (15 cm) above the top where the unit heater has an internal draft hood, or 1 inch (2.5 cm) above the top of the sloping side of a vertical draft hood.

Exception: A unit heater listed for reduced clearances shall be installed in accordance with its listing and the manufacturers' instructions.

2. Unlisted unit heaters shall be installed with clearances to combustible material of not less than 18 inches (46 cm).

3. Clearances for servicing shall be in accordance with the manufacturers' recommendations contained in the installation instructions.

(b) Floor-Mounted Type Unit Heaters.

1. A listed unit heater shall be installed with clearances from combustible material at the back and one side only of not less than 6 inches (15 cm). Where the flue gases are vented horizontally, the 6-inch (15-cm) clearance shall be measured from the draft hood or vent instead of the rear wall of the unit heater.

Exception: A unit heater listed for reduced clearances shall be installed in accordance with its listing and the manufacturers' instructions.

2. Floor-mounted type unit heaters shall be permitted to be installed on combustible floors if listed for such installation.

3. Combustible floors under unlisted floor-mounted unit heaters shall be protected in an approved manner.

4. Clearances for servicing shall be in accordance with the manufacturers' recommendations contained in the installation instructions.

6.28.3 Combustion and Circulating Air. Combustion and circulating air shall be provided in accordance with Section 5.3.

6.28.4 Ductwork. A unit heater shall not be attached to a warm air duct system unless listed and marked for such installation.

6.28.5 Installation in Commercial Garages and Aircraft Hangars. Unit heaters installed in garages for more than three motor vehicles or in aircraft hangars shall be of a listed type and shall be installed in accordance with 5.1.10 and 5.1.11.

6.29 Wall Furnaces.

6.29.1 Installation.

(a) Listed wall furnaces shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturers' instructions. They may be installed in or attached to combustible material.

(b) Unlisted wall furnaces shall not be installed in or attached to combustible material.

(c) Vented wall furnaces connected to a Type B-W gas vent system listed only for single story shall be installed only in single story buildings or the top story of multistory buildings. Vented wall furnaces connected to a Type B-W gas vent system listed for installation in multistory buildings shall be permitted to be installed in single story or multistory buildings. Type B-W gas vents shall be attached directly to a solid header plate that serves as a firestop at that point and that shall be permitted to be an integral part of the vented wall furnace. The stud space in which the vented wall furnace is installed shall be ventilated at the first ceiling level by installation of the ceiling plate spacers furnished with the gas vent. Firestop spacers shall be installed at each subsequent ceiling or floor level penetrated by the vent. (*See Figure 10 for Type B-W gas vent installation.*)

(d) Direct vent wall furnaces shall be installed with the vent/air intake terminal in the outside atmosphere. The thickness of the walls on which the furnace is mounted shall be within the range of wall thickness marked on the furnace and covered in the manufacturers' installation instructions.

(e) Panels, grilles, and access doors that must be removed for normal servicing operations shall not be attached to the building.

6.29.2 Location. Wall furnaces shall be located so as not to cause a hazard to walls, floors, curtains, furniture, or doors. Wall furnaces installed between bathrooms and adjoining rooms shall not circulate air from bathrooms to other parts of the building.

6.29.3 Combustion and Circulating Air. Combustion and circulating air shall be provided in accordance with Section 5.3.

Installation of B-W Gas Vent for Each Subsequent Ceiling or Floor Level of Multistory Buildings

Firestop Spacers Supplied by Manufacturer of B-W Gas Vent

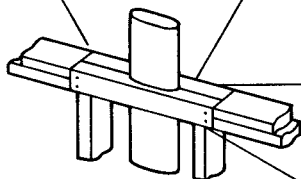
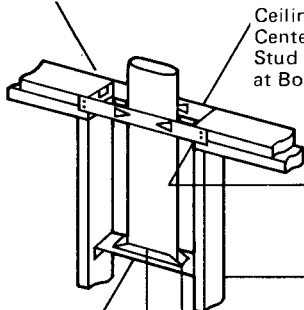


Plate Cut Away to Provide Passage of B-W Gas Vent

Nail Firestop Spacer Securely

Installation of B-W Gas Vent for One Story Buildings or for First Floor of Multistory Buildings



Ceiling Plate Spacers to Center B-W Gas Vent in Stud Space—Nail Securely at Both Ends

Plate Cut Away for Full Width of Stud Space to Provide Ventilation

Studs on 16 in. Centers

Sheet Metal Screw Base Plate to Header

Use Manufacturer's Method of Fastening Pipe to Base Plate

Header Plate of Vented Wall Furnace (Also Acts as Firestop)

For SI units: 1 inch = 2.54 cm

Figure 10. Installation of Type B-W Gas Vents for Vented Wall Furnaces.

6.30 Water Heaters.

6.30.1 Prohibited Installations.

(a) Water heaters shall not be installed in bathrooms, bedrooms, or any occupied rooms normally kept closed. Also see 5.1.8 for flammable vapors.

Exception: Direct vent water heaters.

(b) Single-faucet automatic instantaneous water heaters, as permitted under 7.2.2 in addition to the above, shall not be installed in kitchen sections of light housekeeping rooms or rooms used by transients.

6.30.2 Location. Water heaters of other than the direct vent type shall be located as close as practical to the chimney or gas vent.

6.30.3 Clearance.

(a) The clearances shall not be such as to interfere with combustion air, draft hood clearance and relief, and accessibility for servicing. Listed water heaters shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturers' instructions.

(b) Unlisted water heaters shall be installed with a clearance of 12 inches (30 cm) on all sides and rear. Combustible floors under unlisted water heaters shall be protected in an approved manner.

6.30.4 Pressure Limiting Devices. A water heater installation shall be provided with overpressure protection by means of an approved device constructed, listed, and installed in accordance with the terms of its listing and the manufacturers' instructions.

The pressure setting of the device shall exceed the water service pressure and shall not exceed the maximum pressure rating of the water heater.

6.30.5 Temperature Limiting Devices. Water heater installation or a hot water storage vessel installation shall be provided with overtemperature protection by means of an approved device constructed, listed, and installed in accordance with the terms of its listing and the manufacturers' instructions.

6.30.6 Temperature, Pressure, and Vacuum Relief Devices. The installation of temperature, pressure, and vacuum relief devices or combinations thereof, and automatic gas shutoff devices, shall be in accordance with the terms of their listing and the manufacturers' instructions.

A shutoff valve shall not be placed between the relief valve and the water heater, or on discharge pipes between such valves and the atmosphere.

The hourly Btu discharge capacity or the rated steam relief capacity of the device shall not be less than the input rating of the water heater.

6.30.7 Automatic Instantaneous Type.

Cold Water Supply. The water supply to an automatic instantaneous water heater that is equipped with a water flow actuated control shall be such as to provide sufficient pressure to properly operate the control when water is drawn from the highest faucet served by the heater.

6.30.8 Circulating Tank Types.

(a) **Connection to Tank.** The method of connecting the circulating water heater to the tank shall provide proper circulation of water through the heater and permit a safe and useful temperature of water to be drawn from the tank. (See Figure 11.)

(b) **Size of Water Circulating Piping.** The size of the water circulating piping, in general, shall conform with the size of the water connections of the heater.

(c) **Sediment Drain.** A suitable water valve or cock, through which sediment may be drawn off or the tank emptied, shall be installed at the bottom of the tank.

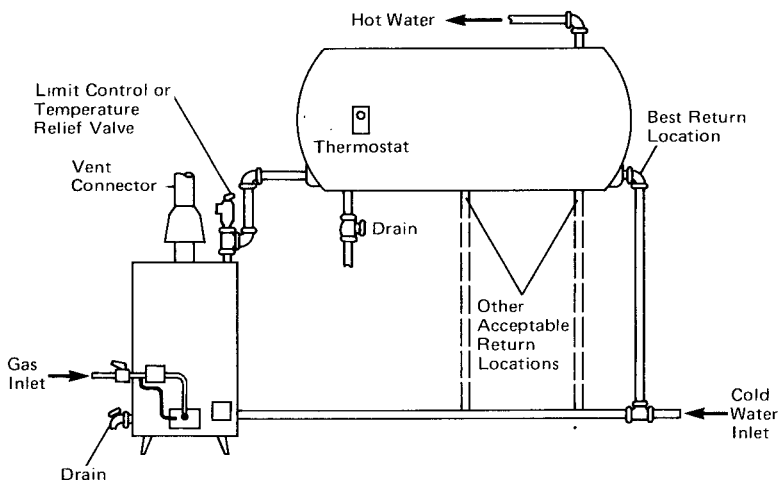


Figure 11. Typical Gravity Circulating Tank Type Installation.

6.30.9* Anti-Siphon Devices. Means acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction shall be provided to prevent siphoning in any water heater or any tank to which a circulating water heater is attached that incorporates a cold water inlet tube.

6.31 Compressed Natural Gas (CNG) Vehicular Fuel Systems. The installation of compressed natural gas (CNG) fueling (dispensing) systems shall conform with *Standard for Compressed Natural Gas (CNG) Vehicular Fuel Systems*, ANSI/NFPA 52.

Part 7

Venting of Equipment

7.1 General. This Part recognizes that the choice of venting materials and the methods of installation of venting systems are dependent on the operating characteristics of the gas utilization equipment. The operating characteristics of vented gas utilization equipment can be categorized with respect to (1) positive or negative pressure within the venting system; and (2) whether or not the equipment generates flue or vent gases that may condense in the venting system. See Section 1.7 for the definition of these vented appliance categories.

7.2 Specification for Venting.

7.2.1 Connection to Venting Systems. Except as permitted in 7.2.2 through 7.2.6, all gas utilization equipment shall be connected to venting systems.

7.2.2 Equipment Not Required to be Vented.

- (a) Listed ranges
- (b) Built-in domestic cooking units listed and marked for optional venting
- (c) Listed hot plates and listed laundry stoves
- (d) Listed Type 1 clothes dryers (*See 6.4.4.*)

(e)† A single listed booster type (automatic instantaneous) water heater, when designed and used solely for the sanitizing rinse requirements of a dishwashing machine, provided that the heater is installed, with the draft hood in place and unaltered, if a draft hood is required, in a commercial kitchen having a mechanical exhaust system; where installed in this manner, the draft hood outlet shall not be less than 36 inches (91 cm) vertically and 6 inches (15 cm) horizontally from any surface other than the heater.

- (f)† Listed refrigerators
- (g)† Counter appliances
- (h)† Room heaters listed for unvented use (*See 6.24.1 and 6.24.2.*)
- (i)† Direct gas-fired make-up air heaters
- (j)† Other equipment listed for unvented use and not provided with flue collars
- (k)† Specialized equipment of limited input such as laboratory burners or gas lights.

†When any or all of this equipment is installed so the aggregate input rating exceeds 20 Btu per hour per cubic foot (207 watts per m³) of room or space in which it is installed, one or more shall be provided with venting systems or other approved means for removing the vent gases to the outside atmosphere so the aggregate input rating of the remaining unvented equipment does not exceed the 20 Btu per hour per cubic foot (207 watts per m³) figure. Where the room or space in which the equipment is installed is directly connected to another room or space by a doorway, archway, or other opening of comparable size that cannot be closed, the volume of such adjacent room or space may be included in the calculations.

7.2.3* Ventilating Hoods. Ventilating hoods and exhaust systems shall be permitted to be used to vent gas utilization equipment installed in commercial applications (*see* 7.3.5) and to vent industrial equipment, particularly when the process itself requires fume disposal. (*See* 5.1.6 and 5.1.8.)

7.2.4 Well-Ventilated Spaces. Where located in a large and well-ventilated space, industrial gas utilization equipment shall be permitted to be operated by discharging the flue gases directly into the space.

7.2.5 Direct Vent Equipment. Listed direct vent gas utilization equipment shall be considered properly vented when installed in accordance with the terms of its listing, the manufacturers' instructions, and 7.8(c).

7.2.6 Equipment with Integral Vents. Gas utilization equipment incorporating integral venting means shall be considered properly vented when installed in accordance with its listing, the manufacturers' instructions, and 7.8(a) and (b).

7.3 Design and Construction.

7.3.1 Minimum Safe Performance. A venting system shall be designed and constructed so as to develop a positive flow adequate to remove flue or vent gases to the outside atmosphere.

7.3.2 Equipment Draft Requirements. A venting system shall satisfy the draft requirements of the equipment in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions.

7.3.3 Design and Construction. Gas utilization equipment required to be vented shall be connected to a venting system designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of Section 7.4 through 7.15.

7.3.4 Mechanical Draft Systems.

(a) Gas utilization equipment, except incinerators, requiring venting shall be permitted to be vented by means of mechanical draft systems of either forced or induced draft design.

(b) Forced draft systems and all portions of induced draft systems under positive pressure during operation shall be designed and installed so as to prevent leakage of flue or vent gases into a building.

(c) Vent connectors serving equipment vented by natural draft shall not be connected into any portion of mechanical draft systems operating under positive pressure.

(d) When a mechanical draft system is employed, provision shall be made to prevent the flow of gas to the main burners when the draft system is not performing so as to satisfy the operating requirements of the equipment for safe performance.

(e) The exit terminals of mechanical draft systems shall be not less than 7 feet (2.1 m) above grade where located adjacent to public walkways and shall be located as specified in 7.8(a) and (b).

7.3.5* Ventilating Hoods and Exhaust Systems.

(a) Ventilating hoods and exhaust systems shall be permitted to be used to vent gas utilization equipment installed in commercial applications.

(b) Where automatically operated gas utilization equipment is vented through a ventilating hood or exhaust system equipped with a damper or with a power means of exhaust, provisions shall be made to allow the flow of gas to the main burners only when the damper is open to a position to properly vent the equipment and when the power means of exhaust is in operation.

7.3.6 Circulating Air Ducts and Plenums. No portion of a venting system shall extend into or pass through any circulating air duct or plenum.

7.4 Type of Venting System to be Used.

7.4.1 The type of venting system to be used shall be in accordance with Table IX.

7.4.2 Plastic Piping. Approved plastic piping shall be permitted to be used for venting equipment listed for use with such venting materials.

7.4.3 Special Gas Vent. Special gas vent shall be listed and installed in accordance with the terms of the special gas vent listing and the manufacturers' instructions.

Table IX Type of Venting System to be Used

Gas Utilization Equipment	Type of Venting System
Listed Category I equipment Listed equipment equipped with draft hood Equipment listed for use with Type B gas vent	Type B gas vent (7.6) Chimney (7.5) Single-wall metal pipe (7.7) Listed Chimney lining system for gas venting (7.5.1c). Special Gas Vent listed for this equipment (7.4.3)
Listed vented wall furnaces	Type B-W gas vent (7.6, 6.28)
Category II equipment	As specified or furnished by manufacturers of listed equipment (7.4.2., 7.4.3)
Category III equipment	As specified or furnished by manufacturers of listed equipment (7.4.2., 7.4.3)
Category IV equipment	As specified or furnished by manufacturers of listed equipment (7.4.2., 7.4.3)
Incinerators, indoors	Chimney (7.5)
Incinerators, outdoors	Single-wall metal pipe [7.7, 7.7.3(c)]
Equipment which may be converted to use of solid fuel	Chimney (7.5)
Unlisted combination gas and oil-burning equipment	Chimney (7.5)
Listed combination gas and oil-burning equipment	Type L vent (7.6) or chimney (7.5)
Combination gas and solid-fuel burning equipment	Chimney (7.5)
Equipment listed for use with chimneys only	Chimney (7.5)
Unlisted equipment	Chimney (7.5)
Decorative appliance in vented fireplace	Chimney [6.6.2(b)]
Gas-fired toilets	Single-wall metal pipe (7.7, 6.27.3)
Direct vent equipment	See 7.2.5
Equipment with integral vent	See 7.2.6
Equipment in commercial and industrial installations	Chimney, ventilating hood, and exhaust system (7.3.5)

7.5 Masonry, Metal, and Factory-Built Chimneys.

7.5.1 Listing or Construction.

(a) Factory-built chimneys shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturers' instructions.

(b) Metal chimneys shall be built and installed in accordance with *Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel-Burning Appliances*, ANSI/NFPA 211, or local building codes.

(c) Masonry chimneys shall be built and installed in accordance with *Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel-Burning Appliances*, ANSI/NFPA 211, or local building codes and lined with approved clay flue lining, a listed chimney lining system, or other approved material that will resist corrosion, erosion, softening, or cracking from vent gases at temperatures up to 1800°F (982°C).

Exception: Masonry chimney flues serving listed gas appliances with draft hoods, Category I appliances, and other gas appliances listed for use with Type B vent shall be permitted to be lined with a chimney lining system specifically listed for use with such appliances. The liner shall be installed in accordance with the liner manufacturers' instructions and the terms of the listing. A permanent identifying label shall be attached at the point where the connection is to be made to the liner. The label shall read: "This gas vent is for appliances that burn gas. Do not connect to solid or liquid fuel-burning appliances or incinerators."

NOTE: For information on installation of gas vents in existing masonry chimneys, see Section 7.6.

7.5.2 Termination.

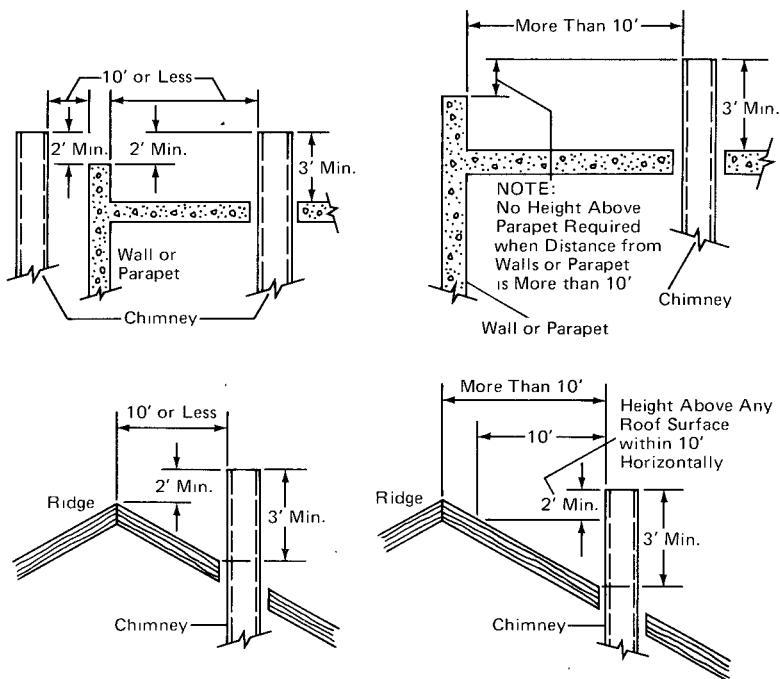
(a) A chimney for residential-type or low-heat gas utilization equipment shall extend at least 3 feet (0.9 m) above the highest point where it passes through a roof of a building and at least 2 feet (0.6 m) higher than any portion of a building within a horizontal distance of 10 feet (3.0 m). (See Figure 12.)

(b) A chimney for medium-heat equipment shall extend at least 10 feet (3.0 m) higher than any portion of any building within 25 feet (7.6 m).

(c) A chimney shall extend at least 5 feet (1.5 m) above the highest connected equipment draft hood outlet or flue collar.

7.5.3 Size of Chimneys. The effective area of a chimney venting system serving listed gas appliances with draft hoods, Category I appliances, and other appliances listed for use with Type B vents shall be in accordance with Part 11 or other approved engineering methods.

Exception No. 1: As an alternate method of sizing an individual chimney venting system for a single appliance with a draft hood, the effective areas of the vent connector and chimney flue shall be not less than the area of the appliance flue collar or draft hood outlet.



A. Termination 10 ft or Less from Ridge, Wall, or Parapet

B. Termination More than 10 ft from Ridge, Wall, or Parapet

For SI units: 1 foot = 0.305 m

Figure 12. Typical Termination Locations for Chimneys and Single-Wall Metal Pipes Serving Residential-Type and Low-Heat Equipment.

Exception No. 2: As an alternate method for sizing a chimney venting system connected to more than one appliance, all with draft hoods, the effective area of the chimney flue shall be not less than the area of the largest vent connector plus 50 percent of the area of additional flue collars or draft hood outlets.

Where an incinerator is vented by a chimney serving other gas utilization equipment, the gas input to the incinerator shall not be included in calculating chimney size, provided the chimney flue diameter is not less than 1 inch (2.54 cm) larger in equivalent diameter than the diameter of the incinerator flue outlet.

7.5.4 Inspection of Chimneys.

(a) Before replacing an existing appliance or connecting a vent connector to a chimney, the chimney passageway shall be examined to ascertain that it is properly lined, clear and free of obstructions and shall be cleaned if previously used for venting solid or liquid fuel-burning appliances or fireplaces.

Exception: Where permitted by the authority having jurisdiction, existing chimneys shall be permitted to have their use continued when an appliance is replaced by an appliance of similar type, input rating, and efficiency.

(b) Cleanouts shall be examined to determine they will remain tightly closed when not in use.

(c) When inspection reveals that an existing chimney is not safe for the intended application, it shall be repaired, rebuilt, lined, relined, or replaced with a vent or chimney to conform to *Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel-Burning Appliances*, ANSI/NFPA 211, or local building codes, and shall be suitable for the equipment to be attached.

7.5.5 Chimney Serving Equipment Burning Other Fuels. (See 7.10.4.)

7.5.6 Support of Chimneys. All portions of chimneys shall be supported for the design and weight of the materials employed. Listed factory-built chimneys shall be supported and spaced in accordance with their listings and the manufacturers' instructions.

7.5.7 Cleanouts. Where a chimney that formerly carried flue products from liquid or solid fuel-burning appliances is used with an appliance using fuel gas, an accessible cleanout shall be provided. The cleanout shall have a tight-fitting cover and be installed so its upper edge is at least 12 inches (30 cm) below the lower edge of the lowest chimney inlet opening.

7.6 Gas Vents. (See Section 1.7, Definitions.)

7.6.1 Application.

(a) Gas vents shall be installed in accordance with the terms of their listings and the manufacturers' instructions.

(b) A Type B-W gas vent shall have a listed capacity not less than that of the listed vented wall furnace to which it is connected.

(c) A gas vent passing through a roof shall extend through the roof flashing, roof jack, or roof thimble.

(d) Type B or Type L vents shall extend in a generally vertical direction with offsets not exceeding 45 degrees, except that a vent system having not more than one 60-degree offset shall be permitted.

Any angle greater than 45 degrees from the vertical is considered horizontal. The total horizontal distance of a vent plus the horizontal vent connector serving draft hood-equipped appliances shall not be greater than 75 percent of the vertical height of the vent.

Exception: Engineered systems as provided in 7.6.3.

Vents serving Category I fan-assisted appliances shall be installed in accordance with the appliance manufacturers' instructions and Part 11 or other approved engineering methods.

(e) An unused chimney flue or masonry enclosure shall be permitted to be used as a passageway for installation of a gas vent.

7.6.2 Gas Vent Termination.

(a) A gas vent shall terminate above the roof surface with a listed cap or listed roof assembly. Gas vents 12 inches (30 cm) in size or smaller with listed caps shall be permitted to be terminated in accordance with Figure 13, provided they are at least 8 feet (2.4 m) from a vertical wall or similar obstruction. All other gas vents shall terminate not less than 2 feet (0.6 m) above the highest point where they pass through the roof and at least 2 feet (0.6 m) higher than any portion of a building within 10 feet (3.1 m).

Exception No. 1: Industrial gas utilization equipment as provided in 7.2.4.

Exception No. 2: Direct vent systems as provided in 7.2.5.

Exception No. 3: Equipment with integral vents as provided in 7.2.6.

Exception No. 4: Mechanical draft systems as provided in 7.3.4.

Exception No. 5: Ventilating hoods and exhaust systems as provided in 7.3.5.

(b) A Type B or a Type L gas vent shall terminate at least 5 feet (1.5 m) in vertical height above the highest connected equipment draft hood or flue collar.

(c) A Type B-W gas vent shall terminate at least 12 feet (3.7 m) in vertical height above the bottom of the wall furnace.

(d) A gas vent extending through an exterior wall shall not terminate adjacent to the wall or below eaves or parapets, except as provided in 7.2.5 and 7.3.4.

7.6.3 Size of Gas Vents. Venting systems shall be sized and constructed in accordance with Part 11 or other approved engineering methods and the gas vent and gas equipment manufacturers' instructions.

(a)* *Category I Appliances.* The sizing of natural draft venting systems serving one or more listed appliances equipped with a draft hood or appliances listed for use with Type B gas vent, installed in a single story of a building, shall be in accordance with Part 11 or in accordance with sound engineering practice.

NOTE: Category I appliances may be either draft hood-equipped or fan-assisted combustion system in design. Different vent design methods are required for draft hood-equipped and fan-assisted combustion system appliances.

Exception No. 1: As an alternate method for sizing an individual gas vent for a single, draft hood-equipped appliance, the effective area of the vent connector and the gas vent shall be not less than the area of the appliance draft hood outlet. Vents serving fan-assisted combustion system appliances shall be sized in accordance with Part 11 or other approved engineering methods.

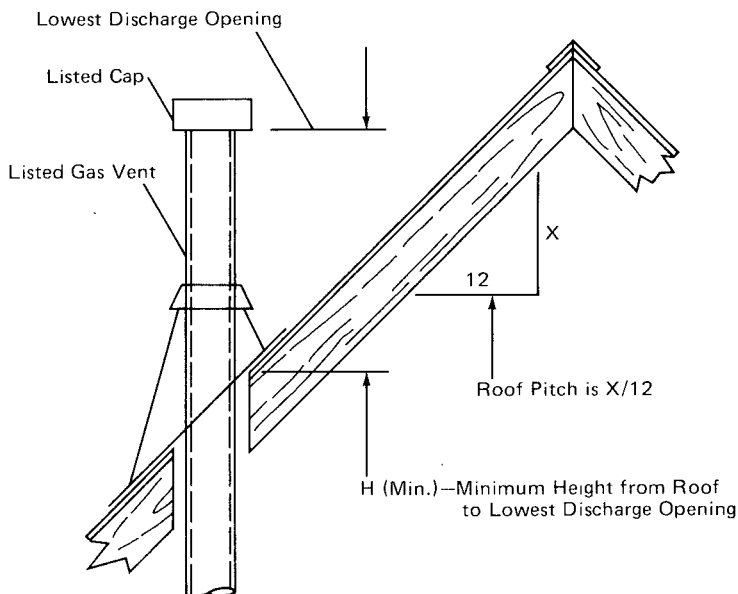
Exception No. 2: As an alternate method for sizing a gas vent connected to more than one draft hood-equipped appliance, the effective area of the vent shall be not less than the area of the largest vent connector plus 50 percent of the areas of additional draft hood outlets. Vents serving fan-assisted combustion system appliances, or combinations of fan-assisted combustion system and draft hood-equipped appliances, shall be sized in accordance with Part 11 or other approved engineering methods.

(b) *Category II, Category III, and Category IV Appliances.* The sizing of gas vents for Category II, Category III, and Category IV gas utilization equipment shall be in accordance with the equipment manufacturers' instructions.

7.6.4 Gas Vents Serving Equipment on More than One Floor. A single or common gas vent shall be permitted in multistory installations to vent Category I gas utilization equipment located on more than one floor level, provided the venting system is designed and installed in accordance with approved engineering methods.

All gas utilization equipment connected to the common vent shall be located in rooms separated from habitable space. Each of these rooms shall have provisions for an adequate supply of combustion, ventilation, and dilution air that is not supplied from habitable space. (See Figure 14.)

The size of the connectors and common segments of multistory venting systems for gas utilization equipment listed for use with Type B double-wall gas vent shall be in accordance with Table 11-6 and Figures G-11 and G-12 in Appendix G, provided:



Roof Pitch	H (Min.)	Ft.
Flat to 6/12	1.0	
6/12 to 7/12	1.25	
Over 7/12 to 8/12	1.5	
Over 8/12 to 9/12	2.0	
Over 9/12 to 10/12	2.5	
Over 10/12 to 11/12	3.25	
Over 11/12 to 12/12	4.0	
Over 12/12 to 14/12	5.0	
Over 14/12 to 16/12	6.0	
Over 16/12 to 18/12	7.0	
Over 18/12 to 20/12	7.5	
Over 20/12 to 21/12	8.0	

For SI units: 1 foot = 0.305 m

Figure 13. Gas Vent Termination Locations for Listed Caps 12 Inches or Less in Size at Least 8 Feet from a Vertical Wall.

(a) The available total height (H) for each segment of a multistory venting system is the vertical distance between the level of the highest draft hood outlet or flue collar on that floor and the centerline of the next highest interconnection tee. (See Figure G-11.)

(b) The size of the connector for a segment is determined from its gas utilization equipment heat input and available connector rise, and shall not be smaller than the draft hood outlet or flue collar size.

(c) The size of the common vertical vent segment, and of the inter-connection tee at the base of that segment, shall be based on the total gas utilization equipment heat input entering that segment and its available total height.

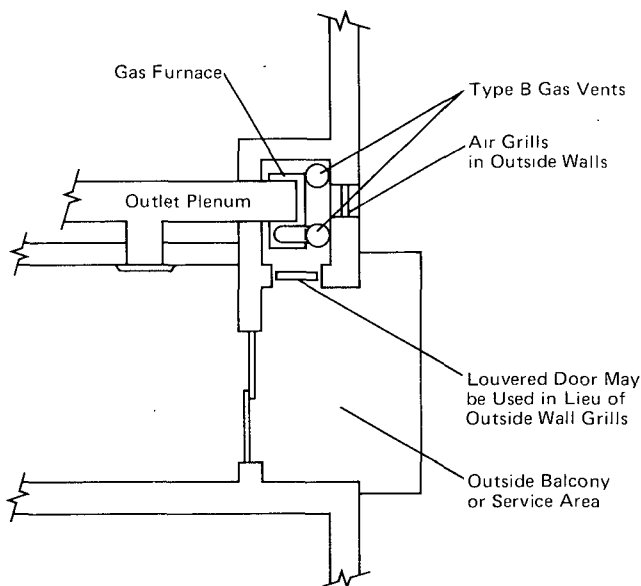


Figure 14. Plan View of Practical Separation Method for Multistory Gas Venting.

7.6.5 Support of Gas Vents. Gas vents shall be supported and spaced in accordance with their listings and the manufacturers' instructions.

7.6.6 Marking. In those localities where solid and liquid fuels are used extensively, gas vents shall be permanently identified by a label attached to the wall or ceiling at a point where the vent connector enters the gas vent. The label shall read:

"This gas vent is for appliances that burn gas. Do not connect to solid or liquid fuel-burning appliances or incinerators."

The authority having jurisdiction shall determine whether its area constitutes such a locality.

7.7 Single-Wall Metal Pipe.

7.7.1 Construction. Single-wall metal pipe shall be constructed of galvanized sheet steel not less than 0.0304 inch (0.7 mm) thick, or other approved, noncombustible, corrosion-resistant material.

7.7.2 Termination.

(a) Single-wall metal pipe shall terminate at least 5 feet (1.5 m) in vertical height above the highest connected equipment draft hood outlet or flue collar.

(b) Single-wall metal pipe shall extend at least 2 feet (0.6 m) above the highest point where it passes through a roof of a building and at least 2 feet (0.6 m) higher than any portion of a building within a horizontal distance of 10 feet (3.1 m). (*See Figure 12.*)

(c) An approved cap or roof assembly shall be attached to the terminus of a single-wall metal pipe. [*Also see 7.7.4(c).*]

7.7.3 Installation With Equipment Permitted by 7.4.1.

(a) Single-wall metal pipe shall be used only for runs directly from the space in which the gas utilization equipment is located through the roof or exterior wall to the outer air. A pipe passing through a roof shall extend without interruption through the roof flashing, roof jacket, or roof thimble.

(b) Single-wall metal pipe shall not originate in any unoccupied attic or concealed space and shall not pass through any attic, inside wall, concealed space, or floor. For the installation of a single-wall metal pipe through an exterior combustible wall, see 7.10.16(b).

(c) Single-wall metal pipe used for venting an incinerator shall be exposed and readily examinable for its full length and shall have suitable clearances maintained.

(d) Minimum clearances from single-wall metal pipe to combustible material shall be in accordance with Table IX. The clearance from single-wall metal pipe to combustible material shall be permitted to be reduced where the combustible material is protected as specified for vent connectors in Table VI.

(e) Where a single-wall metal pipe passes through a roof constructed of combustible material, a noncombustible, nonventilating thimble shall be used at the point of passage. The thimble shall extend at least 18 inches (46 cm) above and 6 inches (15 cm) below the roof with the annular space open at the bottom and closed only at the top. The thimble shall be sized in accordance with 7.10.16(b).

7.7.4 Size of Single-Wall Metal Pipe.

(a)* A venting system of single-wall metal pipe shall be sized and constructed in accordance with approved engineering methods and the gas equipment manufacturers' instructions.

Exception No. 1: As an alternate method of sizing a venting system for a single appliance with a draft hood only, the effective area of the connector and the pipe shall not be less than the area of the appliance flue collar or draft hood outlet.

Exception No. 2: As an alternate method for sizing a venting system connected to more than one appliance, all having draft hoods, the effective area of the pipe shall be not less than the area of the largest connector plus 50 percent of the area of additional flue collars or draft hood outlets.

Exception No. 3: The sizing of single-wall metal pipe for natural draft venting of one or more listed appliances equipped with draft hoods or Category I appliances listed for use with Type B gas vents, installed in a single room, shall be permitted to be in accordance with Tables 11-5 and 11-10.

(b) Any shaped single-wall metal pipe shall be permitted to be used, provided its equivalent effective area is equal to the effective area of the round pipe for which it is substituted and provided the minimum internal dimension of the pipe is not less than 2 inches (5 cm).

(c) The vent cap or a roof assembly shall have a venting capacity not less than that of the pipe to which it is attached.

7.7.5 Support of Single-Wall Metal Pipe. All portions of single-wall metal pipe shall be supported for the design and weight of the material employed.

7.7.6 Marking. Single-wall metal pipe shall comply with the marking provisions of 7.6.6.

7.8* Venting System Location.

(a) A venting system shall terminate at least 3 feet (0.9 m) above any forced air inlet located within 10 feet (3.1 m).

Exception No. 1: This provision shall not apply to the combustion air intake of a direct vent appliance.

Exception No. 2: This provision shall not apply to the separation of the circulating air inlet and vent discharge of listed outdoor appliances.

(b) The venting system of other than a direct vent appliance shall terminate at least 4 feet (1.2 m) below, 4 feet (1.2 m) horizontally from, or 1 foot (30 cm) above any door, window, or gravity air inlet into any

building. The bottom of the vent terminal shall be located at least 12 inches (30 cm) above grade.

(c) The vent terminal of a direct vent appliance with an input of 50,000 Btu per hour (14.7 kw) or less shall be located at least 9 inches (23 cm) from any opening through which flue gases could enter a building, and such an appliance with an input over 50,000 Btu per hour (14.7 kw) shall require a 12-inch (30-cm) vent termination clearance. The bottom of the vent terminal and the air intake shall be located at least 12 inches (30 cm) above grade.

(d) Uninsulated single-wall metal pipe shall not be used outdoors in cold climates for venting gas utilization equipment.

(e) Through-the-wall vents for Category II and Category IV appliances and noncategorized condensing appliances shall not terminate over public walkways or over an area where condensate or vapor could create a nuisance or hazard or could be detrimental to the operation of regulators, relief valves, or other equipment. Where local experience indicates that condensate is a problem with Category I and Category III appliances, this provision shall also apply.

7.9 Condensation Drain.

(a) Provision shall be made to collect and dispose of condensate from venting systems serving Category II and Category IV gas utilization equipment and noncategorized condensing appliances in accordance with 7.8(e).

(b) Where local experience indicates that condensation is a problem, provision shall be made to drain off and dispose of condensate from venting systems serving Category I and Category III gas utilization equipment in accordance with 7.8(e).

7.10 Vent Connectors for Category I Gas Utilization Equipment.

7.10.1 Where Required. A vent connector shall be used to connect gas utilization equipment to a gas vent, chimney, or single-wall metal pipe, except where the gas vent, chimney, or single-wall metal pipe is directly connected to the equipment.

7.10.2 Materials.

(a) A vent connector shall be made of noncombustible corrosion-resistant material capable of withstanding the vent gas temperature produced by the gas utilization equipment and of sufficient thickness to withstand physical damage.

(b) Vent connectors for residential-type appliances shall comply with the following:

1. *Appliances Installed in Attics.* Vent connectors for listed gas appliances having draft hoods and appliances listed for use with Type B gas vents, which are installed in attics, shall be of Type B or Type L vent material.

2. *Appliances Not Installed in Attics.* Vent connectors for listed gas appliances having draft hoods and for appliances having draft hoods and equipped with listed conversion burners, which are not installed in attics, shall be of Type B or Type L vent material or metal pipe having resistance to heat and corrosion not less than that of galvanized sheet steel or aluminum not less than 0.012 inch (0.3 mm) thick.

Vent connectors for combination gas- and oil-burning appliances, residential incinerators, and appliances other than those noted in item 1 above, and which are not installed in attics, shall be of Type L vent material, factory-built chimney section, or steel pipe having resistance to heat and corrosion not less than that of galvanized steel as specified in Table X.

3. Vent connectors shall not be covered with insulation.

Exception: Listed insulated vent connectors shall be installed according to the terms of their listing.

(c) A vent connector for low-heat equipment shall be a factory-built chimney section or steel pipe having resistance to heat and corrosion equivalent to that for the appropriate galvanized pipe as specified in Table X. Factory-built chimney sections shall be joined together in accordance with the chimney manufacturers' instructions.

(d) Vent connectors for medium-heat equipment and commercial and industrial incinerators shall be constructed of factory-built medium-heat chimney sections or steel of a thickness not less than that specified in Table XI, and shall comply with the following:

1. A steel vent connector for equipment with a vent gas temperature in excess of 1000°F (538°C), measured at the entrance to the connector, shall be lined with medium duty fire brick (*Specification for Refractories for Incinerators and Boilers*, ASTM C64, Type F), or the equivalent.

2. The lining shall be at least 2½ inches (6.4 cm) thick for a vent connector having a diameter or greatest cross-sectional dimension of 18 inches (46 cm) or less.

3. The lining shall be at least 4½ inches (11 cm) thick laid on the 4½-inch (11-cm) bed for a vent connector having a diameter or greatest cross-sectional dimension greater than 18 inches (46 cm).

4. Factory-built chimney sections, if employed, shall be joined together in accordance with the chimney manufacturers' instructions.

Table X* Clearances for Connectors

Equipment	Minimum Distance from Combustible Material			
	Listed Type B Gas Vent Material	Listed Type L Vent Material	Single-Wall Metal Pipe	Factory-Built Chimney Sections
Listed equipment with draft hoods and equipment listed for use with Type B Gas Vents	as listed	as listed	6 inches	as listed
Residential boilers and furnaces with listed gas conversion burner and with draft hood	6 inches	6 inches	9 inches	as listed
Residential appliances listed for use with type L vents	not permitted	as listed	9 inches	as listed
Residential incinerators	not permitted	9 inches	18 inches	as listed
Listed gas-fired toilets	not permitted	as listed	as listed	as listed
Unlisted residential appliances with draft hood	not permitted	6 inches	9 inches	as listed
Residential and low-heat equipment other than those above	not permitted	9 inches	18 inches	as listed
Medium-heat equipment	not permitted	not permitted	36 inches	as listed

For SI units: 1 inch = 2.54 cm

*These clearances shall apply unless the listing of an appliance or connector specifies different clearances, in which case the listed clearances shall apply.

Table XI Minimum Thickness for Galvanized Steel Vent Connectors for Low-Heat Appliances

Diameter of Connector, Inches	Minimum Thickness, Inch*
less than 6	0.019
6 to less than 10	0.023
10 to 12 inclusive	0.029
14 to 16 inclusive	0.034
over 16	0.056

For SI units: 1 inch = 2.54 cm = 25.4 mm; 1 inch² = 6.45 cm²

Table XII Minimum Thickness for Steel Vent Connectors for Medium Heat Equipment and Commercial and Industrial Incinerators

Diameter, In.	Vent Connector Size	Minimum Thickness, Inch*
	Area, Sq. In.	
up to 14	up to 154	0.053
over 14 to 16	154 to 201	0.067
over 16 to 18	201 to 254	0.093
over 18	Larger than 254	0.123

For SI units: 1 inch = 2.54 cm = 25.4 mm; 1 inch² = 6.45 cm²

7.10.3* Size of Vent Connector.

(a) A vent connector for gas utilization equipment with a single draft hood or for a Category I fan-assisted combustion system appliance shall be sized and constructed in accordance with Part 11 and other approved engineering methods.

(b) For a single appliance having more than one draft hood outlet or flue collar, the manifold shall be constructed according to the instructions of the appliance manufacturer. If there are no instructions, the manifold shall be designed and constructed in accordance with approved engineering practices. As an alternate method, the effective area of the manifold shall equal the combined area of the flue collars or draft hood outlets.

(c) Where two or more gas appliances are connected to a common vent or chimney, each vent connector shall be sized in accordance with Part 11 or other approved engineering methods.

As an alternate method applicable only when all of the appliances are draft hood-equipped, each vent connector shall have an effective area not less than the area of the draft hood outlet of the appliance to which it is connected.

(d) Where two or more gas appliances are vented through a common vent connector or vent manifold, the common vent connector or vent manifold shall be located at the highest level consistent with available headroom and clearance to combustible material and shall be sized in accordance with Part 11 or other approved engineering methods.

As an alternate method applicable only where all appliances are draft-hood equipped, the effective area of the common vent connector or vent manifold and all junction fittings shall be not less than the area of the largest vent connector plus 50 percent of the areas of additional flue collar outlets.

(e) Where the size of a vent connector is increased to overcome installation limitations and obtain connector capacity equal to the equipment input, the size increase shall be made at the equipment draft hood outlet.

(f) The effective area of the vent connector, where connected to one or more appliances requiring draft for operation, shall be obtained by the application of approved engineering practices to perform as specified in 7.3.1 and 7.3.2.

7.10.4 Two or More Appliances Connected to a Single Vent.

(a) Gas utilization equipment shall not be connected to a chimney flue serving a separate appliance designed to burn solid fuel.

(b) Gas utilization equipment and equipment burning liquid fuel shall be permitted to be connected to one chimney flue through separate openings or shall be permitted to be connected through a single opening if joined by a suitable fitting located as close as practical to the chimney. If two or more openings are provided into one chimney flue, they shall be at different levels. If the gas utilization equipment is automatically controlled, it shall be equipped with a safety shutoff device.

(c) Where two or more vent connectors enter a common gas vent, chimney flue, or single-wall metal pipe, the smaller connector shall enter at the highest level consistent with the available headroom or clearance to combustible material.

(d) Vent connectors serving Category I appliances shall not be connected to any portion of a mechanical draft system operating under positive static pressure, such as those serving Category III or Category IV appliances.

7.10.5* Combination Units.

(a) A listed combination gas- and solid fuel-burning appliance equipped with a manual reset device to shut off gas to the main burner in the event of sustained backdraft or flue gas spillage shall be permitted to be connected to a single chimney flue. The chimney flue shall be sized to properly vent the appliance.

(b) A listed combination gas- and oil-burning appliance shall be permitted to be connected to a single chimney flue. The chimney flue shall be sized to properly vent the appliance.

7.10.6 Clearance. Minimum clearances from vent connectors to combustible material shall be in accordance with Table IX.

Exception: The clearance between a vent connector and combustible material shall be permitted to be reduced where the combustible material is protected as specified for vent connectors in Table VI.

7.10.7 Avoid Unnecessary Bends. A vent connector shall be installed so as to avoid turns or other construction features that create excessive resistance to flow of vent gases.

7.10.8 Joints. Joints between sections of connector piping and connections to flue collars or draft hood outlets shall be fastened by sheet-metal screws or other approved means.

Exception: Vent connectors of listed vent material, which shall be assembled and connected to flue collars or draft hood outlets in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions.

7.10.9 Slope. A vent connector shall be installed without any dips or sags and shall slope upward at least $\frac{1}{4}$ inch per foot (2 cm/m).

7.10.10 Length of Vent Connector.

(a) A vent connector shall be as short as practical and the gas utilization equipment located as close as practical to the chimney or vent.

(b)* The horizontal length of a vent connector to a natural draft chimney or vent serving a single draft hood-equipped appliance shall not be more than 75 percent of the height of the vertical portion of the chimney or vent above the connector.

Exception: Vent systems as provided in Part 11 or in accordance with other approved engineering methods.

7.10.11 Support. A vent connector shall be supported for the design and weight of the material employed to maintain clearances and prevent physical damage and separation of joints.

7.10.12 Location. Where the vent connector used for gas utilization equipment having a draft hood or for Category I appliances is located in or passes through an attic, crawl space, or other area that may be cold, that portion of the vent connector shall be of listed double-wall Type B or Type L vent material or material having equivalent insulation qualities.

7.10.13 Chimney Connection. In entering a flue in a masonry or metal chimney, the vent connector shall be installed above the extreme bottom to avoid stoppage. A thimble or slip joint shall be permitted to be

used to facilitate removal of the connector. The connector shall be firmly attached to or inserted into the thimble or slip joint to prevent the connector from falling out. Means shall be employed to prevent the connector from entering so far as to restrict the space between its end and the opposite wall of the chimney flue.

7.10.14 Inspection. The entire length of a vent connector shall be readily accessible for inspection, cleaning, and replacement.

7.10.15 Fireplaces. A vent connector shall not be connected to a chimney flue serving a fireplace unless the fireplace flue opening is permanently sealed.

7.10.16 Passage Through Ceilings, Floors, or Walls.

(a) A vent connector shall not pass through any ceiling, floor, fire wall, or fire partition. A single-wall metal pipe connector shall not pass through any interior wall.

Exception: Vent connectors made of listed Type B or Type L vent material and serving listed equipment with draft hoods and other equipment listed for Type B gas vents shall be permitted to pass through walls or partitions constructed of combustible material if the connectors are installed with not less than the listed clearance to combustible material.

(b) A vent connector made of a single-wall metal pipe shall not pass through a combustible exterior wall unless guarded at the point of passage by a ventilated metal thimble not smaller than the following:

1. For listed gas utilization equipment equipped with draft hoods and equipment listed for use with Type B gas vents, 4 inches (10 cm) larger in diameter than the vent connector. Where there is a run of not less than 6 feet (1.8 m) of vent connector in the open between the draft hood outlet and the thimble, the thimble shall be permitted to be 2 inches (5 cm) larger in diameter than the vent connector.

2. For unlisted equipment having draft hoods, 6 inches (15 cm) larger in diameter than the vent connector

3. For residential incinerators and all other residential and low-heat equipment, 12 inches (30 cm) larger in diameter than the vent connector.

Exception: In lieu of thimble protection, all combustible material in the wall shall be removed from the vent connector a sufficient distance to provide the specified clearance from such vent connector to combustible material. Any material used to close up such opening shall be noncombustible.

(c) Vent connectors for medium-heat equipment shall not pass through walls or partitions constructed of combustible material.

7.11 Vent Connectors for Category II, Category III, and Category IV Gas Utilization Equipment. (See Section 7.4, *Type of Venting System to be Used.*)

7.12 Draft Hoods and Draft Controls.

7.12.1 Equipment Requiring Draft Hoods. Vented gas utilization equipment shall be installed with draft hoods.

Exception: Dual oven type combination ranges, incinerators, direct vent equipment, fan-assisted combustion system appliances, equipment requiring chimney draft for operation, single firebox boilers equipped with conversion burners with inputs greater than 400,000 Btu per hour (117 kw), equipment equipped with blast, power, or pressure burners that are not listed for use with draft hoods, and equipment designed for forced venting.

7.12.2 Installation. A draft hood supplied with or forming a part of listed vented gas utilization equipment shall be installed without alteration, exactly as furnished and specified by the equipment manufacturer. If a draft hood is not supplied by the equipment manufacturer where one is required, a draft hood shall be installed, be of a listed or approved type and, in the absence of other instructions, be of the same size as the equipment flue collar. Where a draft hood is required with a conversion burner, it shall be of a listed or approved type.

Exception: If it is determined that a draft hood of special design is needed or preferable for a particular installation, the advice of the gas utilization equipment manufacturer and the approval of the authority having jurisdiction shall be secured.

7.12.3 Draft Control Devices. Where a draft control device is part of the gas utilization equipment or is supplied by the equipment manufacturer, it shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions. In the absence of manufacturers' instructions, the device shall be attached to the flue collar of the equipment or as near to the equipment as practical.

7.12.4* Additional Devices. Gas utilization equipment (except incinerators) requiring controlled chimney draft shall be permitted to be equipped with a listed double acting barometric draft regulator installed and adjusted in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions.

7.12.5 Incinerator Draft Regulator. A listed gas-fired incinerator shall be permitted to be equipped with a listed single acting barometric draft regulator where recommended by the incinerator manufacturer. This draft regulator shall be installed in accordance with the instructions accompanying the incinerator.

7.12.6 Install In Same Room. A draft hood or a barometric draft regulator shall be installed in the same room or enclosure as the equipment in such a manner as to prevent any difference in pressure between the hood or regulator and the combustion air supply.

7.12.7 Positioning. A draft hood or draft regulator shall be installed in the position for which it was designed with reference to the horizontal and vertical planes and shall be located so that the relief opening is not obstructed by any part of the gas utilization equipment or adjacent construction. The equipment and its draft hood shall be located so that the relief opening is accessible for checking vent operation.

7.12.8 Clearance. A draft hood shall be located so its relief opening is not less than 6 inches (15 cm) from any surface except that of the gas utilization equipment it serves and the venting system to which the draft hood is connected. Where a greater or lesser clearance is indicated on the equipment label, the clearance shall not be less than that specified on the label. These clearances shall not be reduced.

7.13 Manually Operated Dampers. A manually operated damper shall not be placed in the vent connector from any gas utilization equipment, except in a connector serving a listed gas-fired incinerator where recommended by the incinerator manufacturer and installed in accordance with the instructions accompanying the incinerator. Fixed baffles shall not be classified as manually operated dampers.

7.14 Automatically Operated Vent Dampers. An automatically operated vent damper shall be of a listed type. (*Also see Section 9.3.*)

7.15 Obstructions. A device that retards the flow of vent gases shall not be installed in a vent connector, chimney, or vent.

Exception No. 1: Draft regulators and safety controls (1) specifically listed for installation in venting systems and installed in accordance with the terms of their listing, and (2) designed and installed in accordance with approved engineering methods and approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

Exception No. 2: Listed heat reclaimers and automatically operated vent dampers installed in accordance with the terms of their listing.

Exception No. 3: Approved economizers, heat reclaimers, and recuperators installed in venting systems of equipment not required to be equipped with draft hoods, provided performance in accordance with 7.3.1 and 7.3.2 is obtained.

Tables in Part 11 shall not apply where the equipment covered in Section 7.15, Exception No. 1, 2, or 3 is installed in the vent. Other approved engineering methods shall be used to size these vents.

Part 8

Procedures to be Followed to Place Equipment in Operation

8.1 Adjusting the Burner Input.

8.1.1* Adjusting Input. The input shall be adjusted to the proper rate in accordance with the equipment manufacturers' instructions by changing the size of a fixed orifice, changing the adjustment of an adjustable orifice, or by readjustment of the gas pressure regulator outlet pressure (where a regulator is provided). Overfiring shall be prohibited.

8.1.2 High Altitude. Ratings of gas utilization equipment are based on sea level operation and shall not be changed for operation at elevations up to 2,000 feet (600 m). For operation at elevations above 2,000 feet (600 m), equipment ratings shall be reduced at the rate of 4 percent for each 1,000 feet (300 m) above sea level before selecting appropriately sized equipment.

Exception: As permitted by the authority having jurisdiction.

8.2* Primary Air Adjustment. The primary air for injection (Bunsen) type burners shall be adjusted for proper flame characteristics in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions. After setting the primary air, the adjustment means shall be secured in position.

8.3 Safety Shutoff Devices. Where a safety shutoff device is provided, it shall be checked for proper operation and adjustment in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions. If the device does not function properly to turn off the gas supply in the event of pilot outage, it shall be properly serviced or replaced with new equipment.

8.4 Automatic Ignition. Gas utilization equipment supplied with means for automatic ignition shall be checked for proper operation. If necessary, proper adjustments shall be made.

8.5 Protective Devices. All protective devices furnished with the gas utilization equipment, such as a limit control, fan control to blower, temperature and pressure relief valve, low water cutoff device, manual operating features, etc., shall be checked for proper operation.

8.6 Checking the Draft. Vent connected gas utilization equipment shall be operated for several minutes and checked to see that the combustion products are going up the chimney, or gas vent, properly by passing a lighted match or taper around the edge of the relief opening of

the draft hood. If the chimney or gas vent is drawing properly, the match flame will be drawn into the draft hood. If not, the combustion products will tend to extinguish this flame. If the combustion products are escaping from the relief opening of the draft hood, the equipment shall not be operated until proper adjustments or repairs are made to provide adequate draft through the chimney or gas vent.

8.7 Operating Instructions. Operating instructions shall be furnished and shall be left in a prominent position near the equipment for the use of the consumer.

Table XIII
Gas Input to Burner in Cubic Feet per Hour

Seconds for One Revolution	One-Half Cu Ft	Size of Test Meter Dial		Five Cu Ft
		One Cu Ft	Two Cu Ft	
		Cubic Feet per Hour		
10	180	360	720	1,800
11	164	327	655	1,636
12	150	300	600	1,500
13	138	277	555	1,385
14	129	257	514	1,286
15	120	240	480	1,200
16	112	225	450	1,125
17	106	212	424	1,059
18	100	200	400	1,000
19	95	189	379	947
20	90	180	360	900
21	86	171	343	857
22	82	164	327	818
23	78	157	313	783
24	75	150	300	750
25	72	144	288	720
26	69	138	277	692
27	67	133	267	667
28	64	129	257	643
29	62	124	248	621
30	60	120	240	600
31	58	116	232	581
32	56	113	225	563
33	55	109	218	545
34	53	106	212	529
35	51	103	206	514
36	50	100	200	500
37	49	97	195	486
38	47	95	189	474
39	46	92	185	462
40	45	90	180	450
41	44	88	176	440
42	43	86	172	430
43	42	84	167	420
44	41	82	164	410
45	40	80	160	400
46	39	78	157	391
47	38	77	153	383
48	37	75	150	375
49	37	73	147	367

NOTE: To convert to Btu per hour multiply by the Btu heating value of the gas used.

Table XIII (Continued)
Gas Input to Burner in Cubic Feet per Hour

Seconds for One Revolution	One-Half Cu Ft	Size of Test Meter Dial		Five Cu Ft
		One Cu Ft	Two Cu Ft	
		Cubic Feet per Hour		
50	36	72	144	360
51	35	71	141	353
52	35	69	138	346
53	34	68	136	340
54	33	67	133	333
55	33	65	131	327
56	32	64	129	321
57	32	63	126	316
58	31	62	124	310
59	30	61	122	305
60	30	60	120	300
62	29	58	116	290
64	29	56	112	281
66	29	54	109	273
68	28	53	106	265
70	26	51	103	257
72	25	50	100	250
74	24	48	97	243
76	24	47	95	237
78	23	46	92	231
80	22	45	90	225
82	22	44	88	220
84	21	43	86	214
86	21	42	84	209
88	20	41	82	205
90	20	40	80	200
94	19	38	76	192
98	18	37	74	184
100	18	36	72	180
104	17	35	69	173
108	17	33	67	167
112	16	32	64	161
116	15	31	62	155
120	15	30	60	150
130	14	28	55	138
140	13	26	51	129
150	12	24	48	120
160	11	22	45	112
170	11	21	42	106
180	10	20	40	100

NOTE: To convert to Btu per hour multiply by the Btu heating value of the gas used.

Part 9

Modifications to Existing Appliance Installations for the Purpose of Fuel Conservation

9.1 Safety Inspection. Prior to attempting any modification, a safety inspection of the existing appliance installation shall be performed by a qualified agency performing the modification.

9.2 Reduction of Vent Connector Size. If an existing vent connector is determined to be oversized for the input rate of the connected appliance, it shall be permitted to be resized in accordance with 7.10.3.

9.3 Automatic Vent Damper Device Installation. A listed automatic vent damper device shall be permitted to be installed on an existing appliance installation provided the appliance is listed and equipped with a draft hood and provided the device is installed by a qualified agency (*see Section 1.4*) in accordance with the terms of its listing. The name of the installer and date of installation shall be marked on a label affixed to the damper device.

NOTE: For recommended procedures for installing automatic vent damper devices on existing appliance installations, see Appendices I, J, and K.

Part 10

Sizing Tables

For SI units: 1 cubic foot = 0.028 m^3 ; 1 foot = 0.305 m; 1 inch water column = 0.249 kPa; 1 psig = 6.894 kPa; 1000 Btu per hour = 0.293 kw

Table 10-1
Maximum Capacity of Pipe in Cubic Feet of Gas per
Hour for Gas Pressures of 0.5 psig or Less
and a Pressure Drop of 0.3 Inch Water Column

(Based on a 0.60 Specific Gravity Gas)

Nominal Iron Pipe Size, Inches	Internal Diameter, Inches	Length of Pipe, Feet													
		10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	125	150	175	200
1/4	.364	32	22	18	15	14	12	11	11	10	9	8	8	7	6
3/8	.493	72	49	40	34	30	27	25	23	22	21	18	17	15	14
1/2	.622	132	92	73	63	56	50	46	43	40	38	34	31	28	26
3/4	.824	278	190	152	130	115	105	96	90	84	79	72	64	59	55
1	1.049	520	350	285	245	215	195	180	170	160	150	130	120	110	100
1 1/4	1.380	1,050	730	590	500	440	400	370	350	320	305	275	250	225	210
1 1/2	1.610	1,600	1,100	890	760	670	610	560	530	490	460	410	380	350	320
2	2.067	3,050	2,100	1,650	1,450	1,270	1,150	1,050	990	930	870	780	710	650	610
2 1/2	2.469	4,800	3,300	2,700	2,300	2,000	1,850	1,700	1,600	1,500	1,400	1,250	1,130	1,050	980
3	3.068	8,500	5,900	4,700	4,100	3,600	3,250	3,000	2,800	2,600	2,500	2,200	2,000	1,850	1,700
4	4.026	17,500	12,000	9,700	8,300	7,400	6,800	6,200	5,800	5,400	5,100	4,500	4,100	3,800	3,500

Table 10-2
Maximum Capacity of Pipe in Cubic Feet of Gas per
Hour for Gas Pressures of 0.5 psig or Less and a
Pressure Drop of 0.5 Inch Water Column

(Based on a 0.60 Specific Gravity Gas)

Nominal Iron Pipe Size, Inches	Internal Diameter, Inches	Length of Pipe, Feet													
		10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	125	150	175	200
1/4	.364	43	29	24	20	18	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
3/8	.493	95	65	52	45	40	36	33	31	29	27	24	22	20	19
1/2	.622	175	120	97	82	73	66	61	57	53	50	44	40	37	35
3/4	.824	360	250	200	170	151	138	125	118	110	103	93	84	77	72
1	1.049	680	465	375	320	285	260	240	220	205	195	175	160	145	135
1 1/4	1.380	1,400	950	770	660	580	530	490	460	430	400	360	325	300	280
1 1/2	1.610	2,100	1,460	1,180	990	900	810	750	690	650	620	550	500	460	430
2	2.067	3,950	2,750	2,200	1,900	1,680	1,520	1,400	1,300	1,220	1,150	1,020	950	850	800
2 1/2	2.469	6,300	4,350	3,520	3,000	2,650	2,400	2,250	2,050	1,950	1,850	1,650	1,500	1,370	1,280
3	3.068	11,000	7,700	6,250	5,300	4,750	4,300	3,900	3,700	3,450	3,250	2,950	2,650	2,450	2,280
4	4.026	23,000	15,800	12,800	10,900	9,700	8,800	8,100	7,500	7,200	6,700	6,000	5,500	5,000	4,600

Table 10-3
Maximum Capacity of Semi-Rigid Tubing in Cubic Feet of Gas per
Hour for Gas Pressures of 0.5 psig or Less and
a Pressure Drop of 0.3 Inch Water Column

(Based on a 0.60 Specific Gravity Gas)

Outside Diameter, Inch	Length of Tubing, Feet													
	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	125	150	175	200
$\frac{3}{8}$	20	14	11	10	9	8	7	7	6	6	5	5	4	4
$\frac{1}{2}$	42	29	23	20	18	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
$\frac{5}{8}$	86	59	47	40	36	33	30	28	26	25	22	20	18	17
$\frac{3}{4}$	150	103	83	71	63	57	52	49	46	43	38	35	32	30
$\frac{7}{8}$	212	146	117	100	89	81	74	69	65	61	54	49	45	42

Table 10-4
Maximum Capacity of Semi-Rigid Tubing in Cubic Feet of Gas per
Hour for Gas Pressures of 0.5 psig or Less and
a Pressure Drop of 0.5 Inch Water Column

(Based on a 0.60 Specific Gravity Gas)

Outside Diameter, Inch	Length of Tubing, Feet													
	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	125	150	175	200
$\frac{3}{8}$	27	18	15	13	11	10	9	9	8	8	7	6	6	5
$\frac{1}{2}$	56	38	31	26	23	21	19	18	17	16	14	13	12	11
$\frac{5}{8}$	113	78	62	53	47	43	39	37	34	33	29	26	24	22
$\frac{3}{4}$	197	136	109	93	83	75	69	64	60	57	50	46	42	39
$\frac{7}{8}$	280	193	155	132	117	106	98	91	85	81	71	65	60	55

Table 10-5
Pipe Sizing Table for Pressures Under 1 Pound
Approximate Capacity of Pipes of Different Diameters and
Lengths in Cubic Feet per Hour with Pressure Drop of 0.3 Inch Water Column and 0.6 Specific Gravity

Pipe Size of Schedule 40 Standard Pipe (Inches)	Internal Diameter (Inches)	Total Equivalent Length of Pipe in Feet										
		50	100	150	200	250	300	400	500	1000	1500	2000
1.00	1.049	215	148	119	102	90	82	70	62	43	34	29
1.25	1.380	442	304	244	209	185	168	143	127	87	70	60
1.50	1.610	662	455	366	313	277	251	215	191	131	105	90
2.00	2.067	1275	877	704	602	534	484	414	367	252	203	173
2.50	2.469	2033	1397	1122	960	851	771	660	585	402	323	276
3.00	3.068	3594	2470	1983	1698	1505	1363	1167	1034	711	571	488
3.50	3.548	5262	3616	2904	2485	2203	1996	1708	1514	1041	836	715
4.00	4.026	7330	5038	4046	3462	3069	2780	2380	2109	1450	1164	996
5.00	5.047	13261	9114	7319	6264	5552	5030	4305	3816	2623	2106	1802
6.00	6.065	21472	14758	11851	10143	8990	8145	6971	6178	4246	3410	2919
8.00	7.981	44118	30322	24350	20840	18470	16735	14323	12694	8725	7006	5997
10.00	10.020	80130	55073	44225	37851	33547	30396	26015	23056	15847	12725	10891
12.00	11.938	126855	87187	70014	59923	53109	48120	41185	36501	25087	20146	17242

Table 10-6
Pipe Sizing Table for Pressures Under 1 Pound
Approximate Capacity of Pipes of Different Diameters and
Lengths in Cubic Feet per Hour with Pressure Drop of 0.5 Inch Water Column and 0.6 Specific Gravity

Pipe Size of Schedule 40 Standard Pipe (Inches)	Internal Diameter (Inches)	Total Equivalent Length of Pipe in Feet										
		50	100	150	200	250	300	400	500	1000	1500	2000
1.00	1.049	284	195	157	134	119	108	92	82	56	45	39
1.25	1.380	583	400	322	275	244	221	189	168	115	93	79
1.50	1.610	873	600	482	412	366	331	283	251	173	139	119
2.00	2.067	1681	1156	928	794	704	638	546	484	333	267	229
2.50	2.469	2680	1842	1479	1266	1122	1017	870	771	530	426	364
3.00	3.068	4738	3256	2615	2238	1983	1797	1538	1363	937	752	644
3.50	3.548	6937	4767	3828	3277	2904	2631	2252	1996	1372	1102	943
4.00	4.026	9663	6641	5333	4565	4046	3666	3137	2780	1911	1535	1313
5.00	5.047	17482	12015	9649	8258	7319	6632	5676	5030	3457	2776	2376
6.00	6.065	28308	19456	15624	13372	11851	10738	9190	8145	5598	4496	3848
8.00	7.981	58161	39974	32100	27474	24350	22062	18883	16735	11502	9237	7905
10.00	10.020	105636	72603	58303	49900	44225	40071	34296	30396	20891	16776	14358
12.00	11.938	167236	114940	92301	78998	70014	63438	54295	48120	33073	26559	22731

Table 10-7
Pipe Sizing Table for 1 Pound Pressure
Capacity of Pipes of Different Diameters and Lengths in Cubic Feet per
Hour for an Initial Pressure of 1.0 psig with a 10 Percent Pressure Drop and a Gas of 0.6 Specific Gravity

Pipe Size of Schedule 40 Standard Pipe (Inches)	Internal Diameter (Inches)	Total Equivalent Length of Pipe in Feet										
		50	100	150	200	250	300	400	500	1000	1500	2000
1.00	1.049	717	493	396	338	300	272	233	206	142	114	97
1.25	1.380	1471	1011	812	695	616	558	478	423	291	234	200
1.50	1.610	2204	1515	1217	1041	923	836	716	634	436	350	300
2.00	2.067	4245	2918	2343	2005	1777	1610	1378	1222	840	674	577
2.50	2.469	6766	4651	3735	3196	2833	2567	2197	1947	1338	1075	920
3.00	3.068	11962	8221	6602	5650	5008	4538	3884	3442	2366	1900	1626
3.50	3.548	17514	12037	9666	8273	7332	6644	5686	5039	3464	2781	2381
4.00	4.026	24398	16769	13466	11525	10214	9255	7921	7020	4825	3875	3316
5.00	5.047	44140	30337	24362	20851	18479	16744	14330	12701	8729	7010	6000
6.00	6.065	71473	49123	39447	33762	29923	27112	23204	20566	14135	11351	9715
8.00	7.981	146849	100929	81049	69368	61479	55705	47676	42254	29041	23321	19960
10.00	10.020	266718	183314	147207	125990	111663	101175	86592	76745	52747	42357	36252
12.00	11.938	422248	290209	233048	199459	176777	160172	137087	121498	83505	67057	57392

Table 10-8
Pipe Sizing Table for 2 Pounds Pressure
Capacity of Pipes of Different Diameters and Lengths in Cubic Feet per
Hour for an Initial Pressure of 2.0 psig with a 10 Percent Pressure Drop and a Gas of 0.6 Specific Gravity

Pipe Size of Schedule 40 Standard Pipe (Inches)	Internal Diameter (Inches)	Total Equivalent Length of Pipe in Feet										
		50	100	150	200	250	300	400	500	1000	1500	2000
1.00	1.049	1112	764	614	525	466	422	361	320	220	177	151
1.25	1.380	2283	1569	1260	1079	956	866	741	657	452	363	310
1.50	1.610	3421	2351	1888	1616	1432	1298	1111	984	677	543	465
2.00	2.067	6589	4528	3636	3112	2758	2499	2139	1896	1303	1046	896
2.50	2.469	10501	7217	5796	4961	4396	3983	3409	3022	2077	1668	1427
3.00	3.068	18564	12759	10246	8769	7772	7042	6027	5342	3671	2948	2523
3.50	3.548	27181	18681	15002	12840	11379	10311	8825	7821	5375	4317	3694
4.00	4.026	37865	26025	20899	17887	15853	14364	12293	10895	7488	6013	5147
5.00	5.047	68504	47082	37809	32359	28680	25986	22240	19711	13547	10879	9311
6.00	6.065	110924	76237	61221	52397	46439	42077	36012	31917	21936	17616	15077
8.00	7.981	227906	156638	125786	107657	95414	86452	73992	65578	45071	36194	30977
10.00	10.020	413937	284497	228461	195533	173297	157020	134389	119106	81861	65737	56263
12.00	11.938	655315	450394	361682	309553	274351	248582	212754	188560	129596	104070	89071

Table 10-9
Pipe Sizing Table for 5 Pounds Pressure
Capacity of Pipes of Different Diameters and Lengths in Cubic
Feet per Hour for an Initial Pressure of 5.0 psig with a 10 Percent Pressure Drop and a Gas of 0.6 Specific Gravity

Pipe Size of Schedule 40 Standard Pipe (Inches)	Internal Diameter (Inches)	Total Equivalent Length of Pipe in Feet										
		50	100	150	200	250	300	400	500	1000	1500	2000
1.00	1.049	1989	1367	1098	940	833	755	646	572	393	316	270
1.25	1.380	4084	2807	2254	1929	1710	1549	1326	1175	808	649	555
1.50	1.610	6120	4206	3378	2891	2562	2321	1987	1761	1210	972	832
2.00	2.067	11786	8101	6505	5567	4934	4471	3827	3391	2331	1872	1602
2.50	2.469	18785	12911	10368	8874	7865	7126	6099	5405	3715	2983	2553
3.00	3.068	33209	22824	18329	15687	13903	12597	10782	9556	6568	5274	4514
3.50	3.548	48623	33418	26836	22968	20356	18444	15786	13991	9616	7722	6609
4.00	4.026	67736	46555	37385	31997	28358	25694	21991	19490	13396	10757	9207
5.00	5.047	122544	84224	67635	57887	51304	46485	39785	35261	24235	19461	16656
6.00	6.065	198427	136378	109516	93732	83073	75270	64421	57095	39241	31512	26970
8.00	7.981	407692	280204	225014	192583	170683	154651	132361	117309	80626	64745	55414
10.00	10.020	740477	508926	408686	349782	310005	280887	240403	213065	146438	117595	100646
12.00	11.938	1172269	805694	647001	553749	490777	444680	380588	337309	231830	186168	159336

Table 10-10
Pipe Sizing Table for 10 Pounds Pressure
Capacity of Pipes of Different Diameters and Lengths in Cubic Feet per
Hour for an Initial Pressure of 10.0 psig with a 10 Percent Pressure Drop and a Gas of 0.6 Specific Gravity

Pipe Size of Schedule 40 Standard Pipe (Inches)	Internal Diameter (Inches)	Total Equivalent Length of Pipe in Feet										
		50	100	150	200	250	300	400	500	1000	1500	2000
1.00	1.049	3259	2240	1798	1539	1364	1236	1058	938	644	517	443
1.25	1.380	6690	4598	3692	3160	2801	2538	2172	1925	1323	1062	909
1.50	1.610	10024	6889	5532	4735	4197	3802	3254	2884	1982	1592	1362
2.00	2.067	19305	13268	10655	9119	8082	7323	6268	5555	3818	3066	2624
2.50	2.469	30769	21148	16982	14535	12882	11672	9990	8854	6085	4886	4182
3.00	3.068	54395	37385	30022	25695	22773	20634	17660	15652	10757	8638	7393
3.50	3.548	79642	54737	43956	37621	33343	30211	25857	22916	15750	12648	10825
4.00	4.026	110948	76254	61235	52409	46449	42086	36020	31924	21941	17620	15080
5.00	5.047	200720	137954	110782	94815	84033	76140	65166	57755	39695	31876	27282
6.00	6.065	325013	223379	179382	153527	136068	123288	105518	93519	64275	51615	44176
8.00	7.981	667777	458959	368561	315440	279569	253310	216800	192146	132061	106050	90765
10.00	10.020	1212861	833593	669404	572924	507772	460078	393767	348988	239858	192614	164853
12.00	11.938	1920112	1319682	1059751	907010	803866	728361	623383	552493	379725	304933	260983

Table 10-11
Pipe Sizing Table for 20 Pounds Pressure
Capacity of Pipes of Different Diameters and Lengths in Cubic Feet per
Hour for an Initial Pressure of 20.0 psig with a 10 Percent Pressure Drop and a Gas of 0.6 Specific Gravity

Pipe Size of Schedule 40 Standard Pipe (Inches)	Internal Diameter (Inches)	Total Equivalent Length of Pipe in Feet										
		50	100	150	200	250	300	400	500	1000	1500	2000
1.00	1.049	5674	3900	3132	2680	2375	2152	1842	1633	1122	901	771
1.25	1.380	11649	8006	6429	5503	4877	4419	3782	3352	2304	1850	1583
1.50	1.610	17454	11996	9633	8245	7307	6621	5667	5022	3452	2772	2372
2.00	2.067	33615	23103	18553	15879	14073	12751	10913	9672	6648	5338	4569
2.50	2.469	53577	36823	29570	25308	22430	20323	17394	15416	10595	8509	7282
3.00	3.068	94714	65097	52275	44741	39653	35928	30750	27253	18731	15042	12874
3.50	3.548	138676	95311	76538	65507	58058	52604	45023	39903	27425	22023	18849
4.00	4.026	193187	132777	106624	91257	80879	73282	62720	55538	38205	30680	26258
5.00	5.047	349503	240211	192898	165096	146322	132578	113470	100566	69118	55505	47505
6.00	6.065	565926	388958	312347	267329	236928	214674	183733	162840	111919	89875	76921
8.00	7.981	1162762	799160	641754	549258	486797	441074	377502	334573	229950	184658	158043
10.00	10.020	2111887	1451488	1165596	997600	884154	801108	685645	607674	417651	335388	287049
12.00	11.938	3343383	2297888	1845285	1579326	1399727	1268254	1085462	962025	661194	530962	454435

Table 10-12
Pipe Sizing Table for 50 Pounds Pressure
Capacity of Pipes of Different Diameters and Lengths in Cubic Feet per
Hour for an Initial Pressure of 50.0 psig with a 10 Percent Pressure Drop and a Gas of 0.6 Specific Gravity

Pipe Size of Schedule 40 Standard Pipe (Inches)	Internal Diameter (Inches)	Total Equivalent Length of Pipe in Feet										
		50	100	150	200	250	300	400	500	1000	1500	2000
1.00	1.049	12993	8930	7171	6138	5440	4929	4218	3739	2570	2063	1766
1.25	1.380	26676	18335	14723	12601	11168	10119	8661	7676	5276	4236	3626
1.50	1.610	39970	27471	22060	18881	16733	15162	12976	11501	7904	6348	5433
2.00	2.067	76977	52906	42485	36362	32227	29200	24991	22149	15223	12225	10463
2.50	2.469	122690	84324	67715	57955	51365	46540	39832	35303	24263	19484	16676
3.00	3.068	216893	149070	119708	102455	90804	82275	70417	62409	42893	34445	29480
3.50	3.548	317564	218260	175271	150009	132950	120463	103100	91376	62802	50432	43164
4.00	4.026	442393	304054	244166	208975	185211	167814	143627	127294	87489	70256	60130
5.00	5.047	800352	550077	441732	378065	335072	303600	259842	230293	158279	127104	108784
6.00	6.065	1295955	890703	715266	612175	542559	491598	420744	372898	256291	205810	176147
8.00	7.981	2662693	1830054	1469598	1257785	1114752	1010046	864469	766163	526579	422862	361915
10.00	10.020	4836161	3323866	2669182	2284474	2024687	1834514	1570106	1391556	956409	768030	657334
12.00	11.938	7656252	5262099	4225651	3616611	3205335	2904266	2485676	2203009	1514115	1215888	1040643

Table 10-13
Multipliers to Be Used with Tables 10-1 through 10-12
When the Specific Gravity of the Gas Is Other than 0.60

Specific Gravity	Multiplier	Specific Gravity	Multiplier
.35	1.31	1.00	.78
.40	1.23	1.10	.74
.45	1.16	1.20	.71
.50	1.10	1.30	.68
.55	1.04	1.40	.66
.60	1.00	1.50	.63
.65	.96	1.60	.61
.70	.93	1.70	.59
.75	.90	1.80	.58
.80	.87	1.90	.56
.85	.84	2.00	.55
.90	.82	2.10	.54

Table 10-14 Pipe Sizing
Sizing Between First Stage (High Pressure Regulator) and Second Stage (Low Pressure Regulator)
Maximum undiluted propane capacities listed are based on a 10 psig first stage setting and 1 psig pressure drop.
Capacities in 1,000 Btu/hr

Pipe Length Feet	Schedule 40 Pipe Size 1 psi drop								
	½" 0.622	¾" 0.824	1" 1.049	1¼" 1.38	1½" 1.61	2" 2.067	3" 3.068	3½" 3.548	4" 4.026
30	1843	3854	7259	14904	22331	43008	121180	177425	247168
40	1577	3298	6213	12756	19113	36809	103714	151853	211544
50	1398	2923	5507	11306	16939	32623	91920	134585	187487
60	1267	2649	4989	10244	15348	29559	83286	121943	169877
70	1165	2437	4590	9424	14120	27194	76622	112186	156285
80	1084	2267	4270	8767	13136	25299	71282	104368	145393
90	1017	2127	4007	8226	12325	23737	66882	97925	136417
100	961	2009	3785	7770	11642	22422	63176	92499	128859
150	772	1613	3039	6240	9349	18005	50733	74280	103478
200	660	1381	2601	5340	8002	15410	43421	63574	88564
250	585	1224	2305	4733	7092	13658	38483	56345	78493
300	530	1109	2089	4289	6426	12375	34868	51052	71120
350	488	1020	1922	3945	5911	11385	32078	46967	65430
400	454	949	1788	3670	5499	10591	29843	43694	60870
450	426	890	1677	3444	5160	9938	28000	40997	57112
500	402	841	1584	3253	4874	9387	26449	38725	53948
600	364	762	1436	2948	4416	8505	23965	35088	48880
700	335	701	1321	2712	4063	7825	22047	32280	44969
800	312	652	1229	2523	3780	7279	20511	30031	41835
900	293	612	1153	2367	3546	6830	19245	28177	39253
1000	276	578	1089	2236	3350	6452	18178	26616	37078
1500	222	464	875	1795	2690	5181	14598	21373	29775
2000	190	397	748	1537	2302	4434	12494	18293	25483

Table 10-15
Pipe Sizing
Sizing Between Single or Second Stage (Low Pressure Regulator) and Appliance
 Maximum undiluted propane capacities listed are based on 11" W.C. setting and a 0.5" W.C. pressure drop.
 Capacities in 1,000 Btu/hr

Pipe Length Feet	Nominal Pipe Size, Schedule 40								
	1/2" 0.622	3/4" 0.824	1" 1.049	1 1/4" 1.38	1 1/2" 1.61	2" 2.067	3" 3.068	3 1/2" 3.548	4" 4.026
10	291	608	1146	2353	3525	6789	19130	28008	39018
20	200	418	788	1617	2423	4666	13148	19250	26817
30	161	336	632	1299	1946	3747	10558	15458	21535
40	137	287	541	1111	1665	3207	9036	13230	18431
50	122	255	480	985	1476	2842	8009	11726	16335
60	110	231	435	892	1337	2575	7256	10625	14801
80	94	198	372	764	1144	2204	6211	9093	12668
100	84	175	330	677	1014	1954	5504	8059	11227
125	74	155	292	600	899	1731	4878	7143	9950
150	67	141	265	544	815	1569	4420	6472	9016
200	58	120	227	465	697	1343	3783	5539	7716
250	51	107	201	412	618	1190	3353	4909	6839
300	46	97	182	374	560	1078	3038	4448	6196
350	43	89	167	344	515	992	2795	4092	5701
400	40	83	156	320	479	923	2600	3807	5303

Table 10-16
Copper Tube Sizing
Sizing Between First Stage (High Pressure Regulator) and
Second Stage (Low Pressure Regulator)

**Maximum undiluted propane capacities listed are based on a 10 psig
first stage setting and 1 psig drop.**

Capacities in 1,000 Btu/hr

Tubing Length Feet	Outside Diameter Copper Tubing, Type L				
	$\frac{3}{8}$ " 0.315	$\frac{1}{2}$ " 0.430	$\frac{5}{8}$ " 0.545	$\frac{3}{4}$ " 0.666	$\frac{7}{8}$ " 0.785
30	309	700	1303	2205	3394
40	265	599	1115	1887	2904
50	235	531	988	1672	2574
60	213	481	896	1515	2332
70	196	443	824	1394	2146
80	182	412	767	1297	1996
90	171	386	719	1217	1873
100	161	365	679	1149	1769
150	130	293	546	923	1421
200	111	251	467	790	1216
250	90	222	414	700	1078
300	89	201	375	634	976
350	82	185	345	584	898
400	76	172	321	543	836
450	71	162	301	509	784
500	68	153	284	481	741
600	61	138	258	436	671
700	56	127	237	401	617
800	52	118	221	373	574
900	49	111	207	350	539
1000	46	105	195	331	509
1500	37	84	157	266	409
2000	32	72	134	227	350

Table 10-17
Copper Tube Sizing
Sizing Between Single or Second Stage
(Low Pressure Regulator) and Appliance

Maximum undiluted propane capacities are based on
 11" W.C. setting and a 0.5' W.C. pressure drop.

Capacities in 1,000 Btu/hr

Tubing Length Feet	Outside Diameter Copper Tubing, Type L				
	$\frac{3}{8}"$ 0.315	$\frac{1}{2}"$ 0.430	$\frac{5}{8}"$ 0.545	$\frac{3}{4}"$ 0.666	$\frac{7}{8}"$ 0.785
10	49	110	206	348	536
20	34	76	141	239	368
30	27	61	114	192	296
40	23	52	97	164	253
50	20	46	86	146	224
60	19	42	78	132	203
80	16	36	67	113	174
100	14	32	59	100	154
125	12	28	52	89	137
150	11	26	48	80	124
200	10	22	41	69	106
250	9	19	36	61	94
300	8	18	33	55	85
350	7	16	30	51	78
400	7	15	28	47	73

Table 10-18*
Maximum Capacity of CSST in Cubic Feet per Hour for Gas Pressure of 0.5 psig or less and Pressure Drop of 0.5 in. WC
(Based on a 0.60 Specific Gravity Gas)

EHD** Flow Designation	Tubing Length (ft)																
	5	10	15	20	25	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	150	200	250	300
13	46	32	25	22	19	18	15	13	12	11	10	10	9	7	6	5	5
14	63	44	35	31	27	25	21	19	17	16	15	14	13	10	9	8	7
18	115	82	66	58	52	47	41	37	34	31	29	28	26	20	18	16	15
19	134	95	77	67	60	55	47	42	38	36	33	32	30	23	21	19	17
23	225	161	132	116	104	96	83	75	68	63	60	57	54	42	38	34	32
25	270	192	157	137	122	112	97	87	80	74	69	65	62	48	44	39	36
30	471	330	267	231	206	188	162	144	131	121	113	107	101	78	71	63	57
31	546	383	310	269	240	218	188	168	153	141	132	125	118	91	82	74	67

*Table includes losses for four 90 deg. bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.

**EHD — Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter — A measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Table 10-19*
Maximum Capacity of CSST in Cubic Feet per Hour for Gas Pressure of 0.5 psig or less and a Pressure Drop of 3 in. WC
(Based on a 0.60 Specific Gravity Gas)

EHD** Flow Designation	Tubing Length (ft)																
	5	10	15	20	25	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	150	200	250	300
13	120	83	67	57	51	46	39	35	32	29	27	26	24	19	17	15	13
14	160	112	90	78	69	63	54	48	44	41	38	36	34	27	23	21	19
18	277	197	161	140	125	115	100	89	82	76	71	67	63	52	45	40	37
19	327	231	189	164	147	134	116	104	95	88	82	77	73	60	52	46	42
23	529	380	313	273	245	225	196	176	161	150	141	133	126	104	91	82	75
25	649	462	379	329	295	270	234	210	192	178	167	157	149	122	106	95	87
30	1182	828	673	580	518	471	407	363	330	306	285	268	254	206	178	159	144
31	1365	958	778	672	599	546	471	421	383	355	331	311	295	240	207	184	168

*Table includes losses for four 90 deg. bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.

**EHD — Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter — A measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Table 10-20*
Maximum Capacity of CSST in Cubic Feet per Hour for a Gas Pressure of 0.5 psig or less and a Pressure Drop of 6 in. WC
(Based on a 0.60 Specific Gravity Gas)

EHD** Flow Designation	Tubing Length (ft)																
	5	10	15	20	25	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	150	200	250	300
13	173	120	96	83	74	67	57	51	46	42	39	37	35	28	24	21	19
14	229	160	130	112	99	90	78	69	63	58	54	51	48	39	34	30	27
18	389	277	227	197	176	161	140	125	115	106	100	94	89	73	63	57	52
19	461	327	267	231	207	189	164	147	134	124	116	109	104	85	73	66	60
23	737	529	436	380	342	313	273	245	225	209	196	185	176	145	126	114	104
25	911	649	532	462	414	379	329	295	270	250	234	221	210	172	149	134	122
30	1687	1182	960	828	739	673	580	518	471	435	407	383	363	294	254	226	206
31	1946	1365	1110	958	855	778	672	599	546	505	471	444	421	342	295	263	240

*Table includes losses for four 90 deg. bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.

**EHD — Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter — A measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Table 10-21*
Maximum Capacity of CSST in Cubic Feet per Hour for a Gas Pressure of 2 psi and a Pressure Drop of 1.5 psi
(Based on a 0.60 Specific Gravity Gas)*

EHD** Flow Designation	Tubing Length (ft)													
	10	25	30	40	50	75	80	100	150	200	250	300	400	500
13	334	205	186	160	142	115	111	98	79	68	60	55	47	42
14	435	271	246	212	189	153	148	132	107	92	82	75	64	51
18	715	456	417	362	325	266	257	231	189	164	147	135	117	105
19	855	542	495	429	384	314	304	272	222	193	172	157	136	122
23	1331	860	789	687	618	509	493	444	366	319	287	263	229	206
25	1671	1067	975	848	760	623	604	542	444	386	346	316	275	246
30	3187	1992	1812	1565	1396	1134	1096	978	795	686	611	557	480	428
31	3669	2297	2090	1806	1612	1310	1266	1131	920	794	708	645	557	496

Table does not include effect of pressure drop across line regulator. If regulator loss exceeds **4 in. WC**, **DO NOT USE THIS TABLE**. Consult with regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drop across regulator may vary with the flow rate.

CAUTION: Capacities shown in table may exceed maximum capacity of selected regulator. Consult with tubing manufacturer for guidance.

*Table includes losses for four 90 deg. bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.

**EHD — Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter — A measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Table 10-22*
Maximum Capacity of CSST in Cubic Feet per Hour for a Gas Pressure of 5 psi and a Pressure Drop of 3.5 psi
(Based on a 0.60 Specific Gravity Gas)

EHD** Flow Designation	Tubing Length (ft)													
	10	25	30	40	50	75	80	100	150	200	250	300	400	500
13	523	322	292	251	223	180	174	154	124	107	95	86	74	66
14	674	420	382	329	293	238	230	205	166	143	128	116	100	89
18	1084	691	632	549	492	403	391	350	287	249	223	204	177	159
19	1304	827	755	654	586	479	463	415	339	294	263	240	208	186
23	1995	1289	1181	1031	926	763	740	665	548	478	430	394	343	309
25	2530	1616	1478	1284	1151	944	915	820	672	584	524	479	416	373
30	4923	3077	2803	2418	2157	1752	1694	1511	1228	1060	945	860	742	662
31	5659	3543	3228	2786	2486	2021	1955	1744	1418	1224	1092	995	858	766

Table does not include effect of pressure drop across line regulator. If regulator loss exceeds **4 in.** **DO NOT USE THIS TABLE.** Consult with regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drop across regulator may vary with the flow rate.

CAUTION: Capacities shown in table may exceed maximum capacity of selected regulator. Consult with tubing manufacturer for guidance.

*Table includes losses for four 90 deg. bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.

**EHD — Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter — A measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Table 10-23*
Maximum Capacity of CSST in Thousands of Btu per Hour of Undiluted Liquefied Petroleum Gases at a Pressure of
11 in. WC and a Pressure Drop of 0.5 in. WC
(Based on a 1.52 Specific Gravity Gas)

EHD** Flow Designation	Tubing Length (ft)																
	5	10	15	20	25	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	150	200	250	300
13	72	50	39	34	30	28	23	20	19	17	15	15	14	11	9	8	8
14	99	69	55	49	42	39	33	30	26	25	23	22	20	15	14	12	11
18	181	129	104	91	82	74	64	58	53	49	45	44	41	31	28	25	23
19	211	150	121	106	94	87	74	66	60	57	52	50	47	36	33	30	26
23	355	254	208	183	164	151	131	118	107	99	94	90	85	66	60	53	50
25	426	303	248	216	192	177	153	137	126	117	109	102	98	75	69	61	57
30	744	521	422	365	325	297	256	227	207	191	178	169	159	123	112	99	90
30	863	605	490	425	379	344	297	265	241	222	208	197	186	143	129	117	107

*Table includes losses for four 90 deg. bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.

**EHD — Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter — A measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Table 10-24*
Maximum Capacity of CSST in Thousands of Btu per Hour of Undiluted Liquefied Petroleum Gases at a Pressure of
2 psi and a Pressure Drop of 1.5 psi
(Based on a 1.52 Specific Gravity Gas)

EHD** Flow Designation	Tubing Length (ft)													
	10	25	30	40	50	75	80	100	150	200	250	300	400	500
13	528	324	294	253	224	181	175	150	124	107	94	87	74	66
14	687	428	388	335	298	241	234	208	169	145	129	118	101	80
18	1130	720	659	572	513	420	406	365	298	259	232	213	185	166
19	1351	856	782	678	607	496	480	430	351	305	271	248	215	192
23	2104	1359	1247	1086	977	804	779	701	578	504	453	415	362	325
25	2641	1686	1541	1340	1201	984	954	856	701	610	547	499	434	388
30	5037	3148	2864	2473	2206	1792	1732	1546	1256	1084	965	880	758	676
31	5799	3631	3303	2854	2548	2070	2001	1787	1454	1255	1119	1019	880	784

Table does not include effect of pressure drop across line regulator. If regulator loss exceeds **4 in. WC**, **DO NOT USE THIS TABLE**. Consult with regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drop across regulator may vary with the flow rate.

CAUTION: Capacities shown in table may exceed maximum capacity of selected regulator. Consult with tubing manufacturer for guidance.

*Table includes losses for four 90 deg. bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.

**EHD — Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter — A measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Table 10-25*
Maximum Capacity of CSST in Thousands of Btu per Hour of Undiluted Liquefied Petroleum Gases at a Pressure of
5 psi and a Pressure Drop of 3.5 psi
(Based on a 1.52 Specific Gravity Gas)

EHD** Flow Designation	Tubing Length (ft)													
	10	25	30	40	50	75	80	100	150	200	250	300	400	500
13	826	509	461	396	352	284	275	243	196	169	150	136	117	104
14	1065	664	603	520	463	376	363	324	262	226	202	183	158	140
18	1713	1092	999	867	777	637	618	553	453	393	352	322	279	251
19	2061	1307	1193	1033	926	757	731	656	535	464	415	379	328	294
23	3153	2037	1866	1629	1463	1206	1169	1051	866	755	679	622	542	488
25	3999	2554	2336	2029	1819	1492	1446	1296	1062	923	828	757	657	589
30	7829	4864	4430	3822	3409	2769	2677	2388	1941	1675	1493	1359	1173	1046
31	8945	5600	5102	4404	3929	3194	3090	2756	2241	1934	1726	1572	1356	1210

Table does not include effect of pressure drop across line regulator. If regulator loss exceeds **4 in. WC**, **DO NOT USE THIS TABLE**.

Consult with regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drop across regulator may vary with the flow rate.

CAUTION: Capacities shown in table may exceed maximum capacity of selected regulator. Consult with tubing manufacturer for guidance.

*Table includes losses for four 90 deg. bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.

**EHD — Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter — A measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Part 11

Sizing of Category I Venting Systems

11.1 Definitions. The following definitions apply to tables in this Part.

1. **Appliance Categorized Vent Area/Diameter.** The minimum vent area/diameter permissible for Category I appliances to maintain a non-positive vent static pressure when tested in accordance with nationally recognized standards.

2. **Fan-Assisted Combustion System.** An appliance equipped with an integral mechanical means to either draw or force products of combustion through the combustion chamber or heat exchanger.

3. **FAN Min.** The minimum appliance input rating of a Category I appliance with a fan-assisted combustion system that could be attached to the vent.

4. **FAN Max.** The maximum appliance input rating of a Category I appliance with a fan-assisted combustion system that could be attached to the vent.

5. **NAT Max.** The maximum appliance input rating of a Category I appliance equipped with a draft hood that could be attached to the vent. There are no minimum appliance input ratings for the draft hood equipment appliances.

6. **FAN+FAN.** The maximum combined appliance input rating of two or more Category I fan-assisted appliances attached to the common vent.

7. **FAN+NAT.** The maximum combined appliance input rating of one or more Category I fan-assisted appliances and one or more Category I draft hood-equipped appliances attached to the common vent.

8. **NAT+NAT.** The maximum combined appliance input rating of two or more Category I draft hood-equipped appliances attached to the common vent.

9. **NR.** Vent configuration is not recommended due to potential for condensate formation or pressurization of the venting system.

10. **NA.** Vent configuration is not applicable due to physical or geometric constraints.

Notes for Single Appliance Vent — Tables 11-1 through 11-5

1. These venting tables shall not be used where obstructions, as described in the exceptions to Section 7.15, are installed in the venting system.

2. If the vent size determined from the tables is smaller than the appliance draft hood outlet or flue collar, the smaller size shall be permitted to be used provided:

- (a) The total vent height (H) is at least 10 feet (3 m).
- (b) Vents for appliance draft hood outlets or flue collars 12 inches (30 cm) in diameter or smaller are not reduced more than one table size.
- (c) Vents for appliance draft hood outlets or flue collars larger than 12 inches (30 cm) in diameter are not reduced more than two table sizes.
- (d) The maximum capacity listed in the tables for a fan-assisted appliance is reduced by 10 percent ($0.90 \times$ maximum table capacity).
- (e) The draft hood outlet is greater than 4 inches (10 cm) in diameter. Do not connect a 3-inch (8-cm) diameter vent to a 4-inch (10-cm) diameter draft hood outlet. This provision shall not apply to fan-assisted appliances.

3. Single-appliance venting configurations with zero (0) lateral lengths in Tables 11-1, 11-2, and 11-5 shall have no elbows in the venting system. For vent configurations with lateral lengths, the venting tables include allowance for two 90-degree turns. For each additional 90-degree turn, or equivalent, the maximum capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 10 percent ($0.90 \times$ maximum table capacity).

NOTE: Two 45-degree turns are equivalent to one 90-degree turn.

4. Zero (0) lateral (L) shall apply only to a straight vertical vent attached to a top outlet draft hood or flue collar.

5. Sea level input ratings shall be used when determining maximum capacity for high altitude installation. Actual input (derated for altitude) shall be used for determining minimum capacity for high altitude installation.

6. Numbers followed by an asterisk (*) in Tables 11-3, 11-4, and 11-5 indicate the possibility of continuous condensation, depending on locality. Consult appliance manufacturer, local serving gas supplier, or authority having jurisdiction.

7. For appliances with more than one input rate, the minimum vent capacity (FAN Min) determined from the tables shall be less than the lowest appliance input rating, and the maximum vent capacity (FAN Max/NAT Max) determined from the tables shall be greater than the highest appliance rating input.

8. Listed corrugated metallic chimney liner systems in masonry chimneys shall be sized by using Table 11-1 or 11-2 for Type B vents with the maximum capacity reduced by 20 percent ($0.80 \times$ maximum capacity) and the minimum capacity as shown in Table 11-1 or 11-2. Corrugated metallic liner systems installed with bends or offsets shall have their maximum capacity additionally reduced. (*See Note 3.*)

9. If the vertical vent has a larger diameter than the vent connector, the vertical vent diameter shall be used to determine the minimum bent capacity, and the connector diameter shall be used to determine the maximum vent capacity. The flow area of the vertical vent shall not

exceed seven times the flow area of the listed appliance categorized vent area, flue collar area, or draft hood outlet area unless designated in accordance with approved engineering methods.

10. The tables included in this Part shall be used for chimneys and vents not exposed to the outdoors below the roof line. Chimneys or vents exposed to the outdoors below the roof line may experience continuous condensation, depending on locality. Consult the appliance manufacturer, the local serving gas supplier, or the authority having jurisdiction. A Type B vent or listed chimney lining system passing through an unused masonry chimney flue shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors.

11. Vent connectors shall not be upsized more than two sizes greater than the listed appliance categorized vent diameter, flue collar diameter, or draft hood outlet diameter.

12. In a single run of vent or vent connector, more than one diameter and type shall be permitted to be used, provided that all the sizes and types are permitted by the tables.

13. Interpolation shall be permitted in calculating capacities for vent dimensions that fall between table entries. (*See Example 3, Appendix G.*)

14. Extrapolation beyond the table entries shall not be permitted.

For SI units: 1 inch = 2.54 cm; 1 foot = 0.305 m; 1000 Btu per hour = 0.293 kw; 1 inch² = 6.45 cm²

Table 11-1 (Continued)

20	0	0	97	61	0	202	119	0	349	202	0	540	307	0	776	430	0	1057	575	0	1384	752
	2	10	75	51	14	149	100	18	250	166	20	377	249	33	531	346	41	711	470	50	917	612
	5	21	71	48	29	143	96	38	242	160	47	367	241	62	519	337	73	697	460	86	902	599
	10	28	64	44	38	133	89	50	229	150	62	351	228	81	499	321	95	675	443	112	877	576
	15	34	58	40	46	124	84	59	217	142	73	337	217	94	481	308	111	654	427	129	853	557
	20	48	52	35	55	116	78	69	206	134	84	322	206	107	464	295	125	634	410	145	830	537
30	0	0	100	64	0	213	128	0	374	220	0	587	336	0	853	475	0	1173	650	0	1548	855
	2	9	81	56	13	166	112	14	283	185	18	432	280	27	613	394	33	826	535	42	1072	700
	5	21	77	54	28	160	108	36	275	176	45	421	273	58	600	385	69	811	524	82	1055	688
	10	27	70	50	37	150	102	48	262	171	59	405	261	77	580	371	91	788	507	107	1028	668
	15	33	64	NR	44	141	96	57	249	163	70	389	249	90	560	357	105	765	490	124	1002	648
	20	56	58	NR	53	132	90	66	237	154	80	374	237	102	542	343	119	743	473	139	977	628
	30	NR	NR	NR	73	113	NR	88	214	NR	104	346	219	131	507	321	149	702	444	171	929	594
50	0	0	101	67	0	216	134	0	397	232	0	633	363	0	932	518	0	1297	708	0	1730	952
	2	8	86	61	11	183	122	14	320	206	15	497	314	22	715	445	26	975	615	33	1276	813
	5	20	82	NR	27	177	119	35	312	200	43	487	308	55	702	438	65	960	605	77	1259	798
	10	26	76	NR	35	168	114	45	299	190	56	471	298	73	681	426	86	935	589	101	1230	773
	15	59	70	NR	42	158	NR	54	287	180	66	455	288	85	662	413	100	911	572	117	1203	747
	20	NR	NR	NR	50	149	NR	63	275	169	76	440	278	97	642	401	113	888	556	131	1176	722
	30	NR	NR	NR	69	131	NR	84	250	NR	99	410	259	123	605	376	141	844	522	161	1125	670
100	0	NR	NR	NR	0	218	NR	0	407	NR	0	665	400	0	997	560	0	1411	770	0	1908	1040
	2	NR	NR	NR	10	194	NR	12	354	NR	13	566	375	18	831	510	21	1155	700	25	1536	935
	5	NR	NR	NR	26	189	NR	33	347	NR	40	557	369	52	820	504	60	1141	692	71	1519	926
	10	NR	NR	NR	33	182	NR	43	335	NR	53	542	361	68	801	493	80	1118	679	94	1492	910
	15	NR	NR	NR	40	174	NR	50	321	NR	62	528	353	80	782	482	93	1095	666	109	1465	895
	20	NR	NR	NR	47	166	NR	59	311	NR	71	513	344	90	763	471	105	1073	653	122	1438	880
	30	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	78	290	NR	92	483	NR	115	726	449	131	1029	627	149	1387	849
	50	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	147	428	NR	180	651	405	197	944	575	217	1288	787

Table 11-1 (Continued)

Height H (ft)		Lateral L (ft)		Vent Diameter — D																									
				10"		12"			14"			16"			18"			20"			22"			24"					
				Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour																									
		FAN		NAT		FAN		NAT		FAN		NAT		FAN		NAT		FAN		NAT		FAN		NAT		FAN		NAT	
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	
6	0	0	1121	570	0	1645	850	0	2267	1170	0	2983	1530	0	3802	1960	0	4721	2430	0	5737	2950	0	6853	3520				
	2	75	675	455	103	982	650	138	1346	890	178	1769	1170	225	2250	1480	296	2782	1850	360	3377	2220	426	4030	2670				
	4	110	668	445	147	975	640	191	1338	880	242	1761	1160	300	2242	1475	390	2774	1835	469	3370	2215	555	4023	2660				
	6	128	661	435	171	967	630	219	1330	870	276	1753	1150	341	2235	1470	437	2767	1820	523	3363	2210	618	4017	2650				
8	0	0	1261	660	0	1858	970	0	2571	1320	0	3399	1740	0	4333	2220	0	5387	2750	0	6555	3360	0	7838	4010				
	2	71	770	515	98	1124	745	130	1543	1020	168	2030	1340	212	2584	1700	278	3196	2110	336	3882	2560	401	4634	3050				
	5	115	758	503	154	1110	733	199	1528	1010	251	2013	1330	311	2563	1685	398	3180	2090	476	3863	2545	562	4612	3040				
	8	137	746	490	180	1097	720	231	1514	1000	289	2000	1320	354	2552	1670	450	3163	2070	537	3850	2530	630	4602	3030				
10	0	0	1377	720	0	2036	1060	0	2825	1450	0	3742	1925	0	4782	2450	0	5955	3050	0	7254	3710	0	8682	4450				
	2	68	852	560	93	1244	850	124	1713	1130	161	2256	1480	202	2868	1890	264	3556	2340	319	4322	2840	378	5153	3390				
	5	112	839	547	149	1229	829	192	1696	1105	243	2238	1461	300	2849	1871	382	3536	2318	458	4301	2818	540	5132	3371				
	10	142	817	525	187	1204	795	238	1669	1080	298	2209	1430	364	2818	1840	459	3504	2280	546	4268	2780	641	5099	3340				
15	0	0	1596	840	0	2380	1240	0	3323	1720	0	4423	2270	0	5678	2900	0	7099	3620	0	8665	4410	0	10393	5300				
	2	63	1019	675	86	1495	985	114	2062	1350	147	2719	1770	186	3467	2260	239	4304	2800	290	5232	3410	346	6251	4080				
	5	105	1003	660	140	1476	967	182	2041	1327	229	2696	1748	283	3442	2235	355	4278	2777	426	5204	3385	501	6222	4057				
	10	135	977	635	177	1446	936	227	2009	1289	283	2659	1712	346	3402	2193	432	4234	2739	510	5159	3343	599	6175	4019				
	15	155	953	610	202	1418	905	257	1976	1250	318	2623	1675	385	3363	2150	479	4192	2700	564	5115	3300	665	6129	3980				

Table 11-1 (Continued)

20	0	0 1756 930	0 2637 1350	0 3701 1900	0 4948 2520	0 6376 3250	0 7988 4060	0 9785 4980	0 11753 6000
	2	59 1150 755	81 1694 1100	107 2343 1520	139 3097 2000	175 3955 2570	220 4916 3200	269 5983 3910	321 7154 4700
	5	101 1133 738	135 1674 1079	174 2320 1498	219 3071 1978	270 3926 2544	337 4885 3174	403 5950 3880	475 7119 4662
	10	130 1105 710	172 1641 1045	220 2282 1460	273 3029 1940	334 3880 2500	413 4835 3130	489 5896 3830	573 7063 4600
	15	150 1078 688	195 1609 1018	248 2245 1425	306 2988 1910	372 3835 2465	459 4786 3090	541 5844 3795	631 7007 4575
	20	167 1052 665	217 1578 990	273 2210 1390	335 2948 1880	404 3791 2430	495 4737 3050	585 5792 3760	689 6953 4550
30	0	0 1977 1060	0 3004 1550	0 4252 2170	0 5725 2920	0 7420 3770	0 9341 4750	0 11483 5850	0 13848 7060
	2	54 1351 865	74 2004 1310	98 2786 1800	127 3696 2380	159 4734 3050	199 5900 3810	241 7194 4650	285 8617 5600
	5	96 1332 851	127 1981 1289	164 2759 1775	206 3666 2350	252 4701 3020	312 5863 3783	373 7155 4622	439 8574 5552
	10	125 1301 829	164 1944 1254	209 2716 1733	259 3617 2300	316 4647 2970	386 5803 3739	456 7090 4574	535 8505 5471
	15	143 1272 807	187 1908 1220	237 2674 1692	292 3570 2250	354 4594 2920	431 5744 3695	507 7026 4527	590 8437 5391
	20	160 1243 784	207 1873 1185	260 2633 1650	319 3523 2200	384 4542 2870	467 5686 3650	548 6964 4480	639 8370 5310
	30	195 1189 745	246 1807 1130	305 2555 1585	369 3433 2130	440 4442 2785	540 5574 3565	635 6842 4375	739 8239 5225
50	0	0 2231 1195	0 3441 1825	0 4934 2550	0 6711 3440	0 8774 4460	0 11129 5635	0 13767 6940	0 16694 8430
	2	41 1620 1010	66 2431 1513	86 3409 2125	113 4554 2840	141 5864 3670	171 7339 4630	209 8980 5695	251 10788 6860
	5	90 1600 996	118 2406 1495	151 3380 2102	191 4520 2813	234 5826 3639	283 7295 4597	336 8933 5654	394 10737 6818
	10	118 1567 972	154 2366 1466	196 3332 2064	243 4464 2767	295 5763 3585	355 7224 4542	419 8855 5585	491 10652 6749
	15	136 1536 948	177 2327 1437	222 3285 2026	274 4409 2721	330 5701 3534	396 7155 4511	465 8779 5546	542 10570 6710
	20	151 1505 924	195 2288 1408	244 3239 1987	300 4356 2675	361 5641 3481	433 7086 4479	506 8704 5506	586 10488 6670
	30	183 1446 876	232 2214 1349	287 3150 1910	347 4253 2631	412 5523 3431	494 6953 4421	577 8557 5444	672 10328 6603
100	0	0 2491 1310	0 3925 2050	0 5729 2950	0 7914 4050	0 10485 5300	0 13454 6700	0 16817 8600	0 20578 10300
	2	30 1975 1170	44 3027 1820	72 4313 2550	95 5834 3500	120 7591 4600	138 9577 5800	169 11803 7200	204 14264 8800
	5	82 1955 1159	107 3002 1803	136 4282 2531	172 5797 3475	208 7548 4566	245 9528 5769	293 11748 7162	341 14204 8756
	10	108 1923 1142	142 2961 1775	180 4231 2500	223 5737 3434	268 7478 4509	318 9447 5717	374 11658 7100	436 14105 8683
	15	126 1892 1124	163 2920 1747	206 4182 2469	252 5678 3392	304 7409 4451	358 9367 5665	418 11569 7037	487 14007 8610
	20	141 1861 1107	181 2880 1719	226 4133 2438	277 5619 3351	330 7341 4394	387 9289 5613	452 11482 6975	523 13910 8537
	30	170 1802 1071	215 2803 1663	265 4037 2375	319 5505 3267	378 7209 4279	446 9136 5509	514 11310 6850	592 13720 8391
	50	241 1688 1000	292 2657 1550	350 3856 2250	415 5289 3100	486 6956 4050	572 8841 5300	659 10979 6600	752 13354 8100

Table 11-2
Capacity of Type B Double-Wall Vents with Single-Wall Metal Connectors
Serving a Single Category I Appliance

Height H (ft)		Lateral L (ft)		Vent Diameter — D																								
				3"		4"		5"		6"		7"		8"		9"		10"		12"								
				Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour																								
				FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	
Min		Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	
6	0	38	77	45	59	151	85	85	249	140	126	373	204	165	522	284	211	695	369	267	894	469	371	1118	569	537	1639	849
	2	39	51	36	60	96	66	85	156	104	123	231	156	159	320	213	201	423	284	251	541	368	347	673	453	498	979	648
	4	NR	NR	33	74	92	63	102	152	102	146	225	152	187	313	208	237	416	277	295	533	360	409	664	443	584	971	638
	6	NR	NR	31	83	89	60	114	147	99	163	220	148	207	307	203	263	409	271	327	526	352	449	656	433	638	962	627
8	0	37	83	50	58	164	93	83	273	154	123	412	234	161	580	319	206	777	414	258	1002	536	360	1257	658	521	1852	967
	2	39	56	39	59	108	75	83	176	119	121	261	179	155	363	246	197	482	321	246	617	417	339	768	513	486	1120	743
	5	NR	NR	37	77	102	69	107	168	114	151	252	171	193	352	235	245	470	311	305	604	404	418	754	500	598	1104	730
	8	NR	NR	33	90	95	64	122	161	107	175	243	163	223	342	225	280	458	300	344	591	392	470	740	486	665	1089	715
10	0	37	87	53	57	174	99	82	293	165	120	444	254	158	628	344	202	844	449	253	1093	584	351	1373	718	507	2031	1057
	2	39	61	41	59	117	80	82	193	128	119	287	194	153	400	272	193	531	354	242	681	456	332	849	559	475	1242	848
	5	52	56	39	76	111	76	105	185	122	148	277	186	190	388	261	241	518	344	299	667	443	409	834	544	584	1224	825
	10	NR	NR	34	97	100	68	132	171	112	188	261	171	237	369	241	296	497	325	363	643	423	492	808	520	688	1194	788
15	0	36	93	57	56	190	111	80	325	186	116	499	283	153	713	388	195	966	523	244	1259	681	336	1591	838	488	2374	1237
	2	38	69	47	57	136	93	80	225	149	115	337	224	148	473	314	187	631	413	232	812	543	319	1015	673	457	1491	983
	5	51	63	44	75	128	86	102	216	140	144	326	217	182	459	298	231	616	400	287	795	526	392	997	657	562	1469	963
	10	NR	NR	39	95	116	79	128	201	131	182	308	203	228	438	284	284	592	381	349	768	501	470	966	628	664	1433	928
	15	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	72	158	186	124	220	290	192	272	418	269	334	568	367	404	742	484	540	937	601	750	1399	894

Table 11-2 (Continued)

20	0	35	96	60	54	200	118	78	346	201	114	537	306	149	772	428	190	1053	573	238	1379	750	326	1751	927	473	2631	1346
	2	37	74	50	56	148	99	78	248	165	113	375	248	144	528	344	182	708	468	227	914	611	309	1146	754	443	1689	1098
	5	50	68	47	73	140	94	100	239	158	141	363	239	178	514	334	224	692	457	279	896	596	381	1126	734	547	1665	1074
	10	NR	NR	41	93	129	86	125	223	146	177	344	224	222	491	316	277	666	437	339	866	570	457	1092	702	646	1626	1037
	15	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	80	155	208	136	216	325	210	264	469	301	325	640	419	393	838	549	526	1060	677	730	1587	1005
	20	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	186	192	126	254	306	196	309	448	285	374	616	400	448	810	526	592	1028	651	808	1550	973
30	0	34	99	63	53	211	127	76	372	219	110	584	334	144	849	472	184	1168	647	229	1542	852	312	1971	1056	454	2996	1545
	2	37	80	56	55	164	111	76	281	183	109	429	279	139	610	392	175	823	533	219	1069	698	296	1346	863	424	1999	1308
	5	49	74	52	72	157	106	98	271	173	136	417	271	171	595	382	215	806	521	269	1049	684	366	1324	846	524	1971	1283
	10	NR	NR	NR	91	144	98	122	255	168	171	397	257	213	570	367	265	777	501	327	1017	662	440	1287	821	620	1927	1243
	15	NR	NR	NR	115	131	NR	151	239	157	208	377	242	255	547	349	312	750	481	379	985	638	507	1251	794	702	1884	1205
	20	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	181	223	NR	246	357	228	298	524	333	360	723	461	433	955	615	570	1216	768	780	1841	1166
50	0	33	99	66	51	213	133	73	394	230	105	629	361	138	928	515	176	1292	704	220	1724	948	295	2223	1189	428	3432	1818
	2	36	84	61	53	181	121	73	318	205	104	495	312	133	712	443	168	971	613	209	1273	811	280	1615	1007	401	2426	1509
	5	48	80	NR	70	174	117	94	308	198	131	482	305	164	696	435	204	953	602	257	1252	795	347	1591	991	496	2396	1490
	10	NR	NR	NR	89	160	NR	118	292	186	162	461	292	203	671	420	253	923	583	313	1217	765	418	1551	963	589	2347	1455
	15	NR	NR	NR	112	148	NR	145	275	174	199	441	280	244	646	405	299	894	562	363	1183	736	481	1512	934	668	2299	1421
	20	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	176	257	NR	236	420	267	285	622	389	345	866	543	415	1150	708	544	1473	906	741	2251	1387
100	0	NR	NR	NR	49	214	NR	69	403	NR	100	659	395	131	991	555	166	1404	765	207	1900	1033	273	2479	1300	395	3912	2042
	2	NR	NR	NR	51	192	NR	70	351	NR	98	563	373	125	828	508	158	1152	698	196	1532	933	259	1970	1168	371	3021	1817
	5	NR	NR	NR	67	186	NR	90	342	NR	125	551	366	156	813	501	194	1134	688	240	1511	921	322	1945	1153	460	2990	1796
	10	NR	NR	NR	85	175	NR	113	324	NR	153	532	354	191	789	486	238	1104	672	293	1477	902	389	1905	1133	547	2938	1763
	15	NR	NR	NR	132	162	NR	138	310	NR	188	511	343	230	764	473	281	1075	656	342	1443	884	447	1865	1110	618	2888	1730
	20	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	168	295	NR	224	487	NR	270	739	458	325	1046	639	391	1410	864	507	1825	1087	690	2838	1696
50	30	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	231	264	NR	301	448	NR	355	685	NR	418	988	NR	491	1343	824	631	1747	1041	834	2739	1627
	50	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	540	584	NR	617	866	NR	711	1205	NR	895	1591	NR	1138	2547	1489

Table 11-3
Capacity of Masonry Chimney Flue with Type B Double-Wall Vent Connectors
Serving a Single Category I Appliance

		Type B Double-Wall Connector Diameter — D To be used with chimney areas within the size limits at bottom																													
		3"			4"			5"			6"			7"			8"			9"			10"			12"					
		Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour																													
Height H (ft)	Lateral L (ft)	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	2	NR	NR	28	NR	NR	52	NR	NR	86	NR	NR	130	NR	NR	180	NR	NR	247	NR	NR	320	NR	NR	401	NR	NR	581			
	5	NR	NR	25*	NR	NR	49	NR	NR	82	NR	NR	117	NR	NR	165	NR	NR	231	NR	NR	298	NR	NR	376	NR	NR	561			
8	2	NR	NR	29	NR	NR	55	NR	NR	93	NR	NR	145	NR	NR	198	NR	NR	266	84	590	350	100	728	446	139	1024	651			
	5	NR	NR	26*	NR	NR	52	NR	NR	88	NR	NR	134	NR	NR	183	NR	NR	247	NR	NR	328	149	711	423	201	1007	640			
	8	NR	NR	24*	NR	NR	48*	NR	NR	83	NR	NR	127	NR	NR	175	NR	NR	239	NR	NR	318	173	695	410	231	990	623			
10	2	NR	NR	31	NR	NR	61	NR	NR	103	NR	NR	162	NR	NR	221	68	519	298	82	655	388	98	810	491	136	1144	724			
	5	NR	NR	28*	NR	NR	57	NR	NR	96	NR	NR	148	NR	NR	204	NR	NR	277	124	638	365	146	791	466	196	1124	712			
	10	NR	NR	25*	NR	NR	50*	NR	NR	87	NR	NR	139	NR	NR	191	NR	NR	263	155	610	347	182	762	444	240	1093	668			
15	2	NR	NR	35*	NR	NR	67	NR	NR	114	NR	NR	179	53	475	250	64	613	336	77	779	441	92	968	562	127	1376	841			
	5	NR	NR	35*	NR	NR	62	NR	NR	107	NR	NR	164	NR	NR	231	99	594	313	118	759	416	139	946	533	186	1352	828			
	10	NR	NR	28*	NR	NR	55*	NR	NR	97	NR	NR	153	NR	NR	216	126	565	296	148	727	394	173	912	567	229	1315	777			
	15	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	48*	NR	NR	89*	NR	NR	141	NR	NR	201	NR	NR	281	171	698	375	198	880	485	259	1280	742			
20	2	NR	NR	38*	NR	NR	74	NR	NR	124	NR	NR	201	51	522	274	61	678	375	73	867	491	87	1083	627	121	1548	953			
	5	NR	NR	36*	NR	NR	68*	NR	NR	116	NR	NR	184	80	503	254	95	658	350	113	845	463	133	1059	597	179	1523	933			
	10	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	60*	NR	NR	107*	NR	NR	172	NR	NR	237	122	627	332	143	811	440	167	1022	566	221	1482	879			
	15	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	97*	NR	NR	159	NR	NR	220	NR	NR	314	165	780	418	191	987	541	251	1443	840			
	20	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	83*	NR	NR	148*	NR	NR	206	NR	NR	296	186	750	397	214	955	513	277	1406	807			

Table 11-3 (Continued)

30	2	NR	NR	41*	NR	NR	82*	NR	NR	137	NR	NR	216	47	581	303	57	762	421	68	985	558	81	1240	717	111	1793	1112
	5	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	76*	NR	NR	128*	NR	NR	198	75	561	281	90	741	393	106	962	526	125	1216	683	169	1766	1094
	10	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	67*	NR	NR	115*	NR	NR	184*	NR	NR	263	115	709	373	135	927	500	158	1176	648	210	1721	1025
	15	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	107*	NR	NR	171*	NR	NR	243*	NR	NR	353	156	893	476	181	1139	621	239	1679	981
	20	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	91*	NR	NR	159*	NR	NR	227*	NR	NR	332	176	860	450	203	1103	592	264	1638	940
	30	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	188*	NR	NR	288*	NR	NR	416	249	1035	555	318	1560	877
50	2	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	92*	NR	NR	161*	NR	NR	251*	NR	NR	351*	51	840	477	61	1106	633	72	1413	812	99	2080	1243
	5	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	151*	NR	NR	230*	NR	NR	323*	83	819	445	98	1083	596	116	1387	774	155	2052	1225
	10	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	138*	NR	NR	215*	NR	NR	304*	NR	NR	424*	126	1047	567	147	1347	733	195	2006	1147
	15	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	127*	NR	NR	199*	NR	NR	282*	NR	NR	400*	146	1010	539*	170	1307	702	222	1961	1099
	20	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	185*	NR	NR	264*	NR	NR	376*	165	977	511*	190	1269	669*	246	1916	1050
	30	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	327*	NR	NR	468*	233	1196	623*	295	1832	984
Minimum Internal Area of Chimney Square Inches		12			19			28			38			50			63			78			95			132		
Maximum Internal Area of Chimney Square Inches		49			88			137			198			269			352			445			550			792		

* See Note 6

Table 11-4
Capacity of Masonry Chimney Flue with Single-Wall Vent Connectors
Serving a Single Category I Appliance

Height H (ft)		Lateral L (ft)		Single-Wall Metal Connector Diameter — D To be used with chimney areas within the size limits at bottom																												
				3"			4"			5"			6"			7"			8"			9"			10"			12"				
				Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour																												
				FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN	
Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	2	NR	NR	28	NR	NR	52	NR	NR	86	NR	NR	130	NR	NR	180	NR	NR	247	NR	NR	319	NR	NR	400	NR	NR	580	NR	NR	580	
		NR	NR	25*	NR	NR	48	NR	NR	81	NR	NR	116	NR	NR	164	NR	NR	230	NR	NR	297	NR	NR	375	NR	NR	560	NR	NR	560	
8	2	NR	NR	29	NR	NR	55	NR	NR	93	NR	NR	145	NR	NR	197	NR	NR	265	NR	NR	349	382	725	445	549	1021	650	NR	NR	650	
	5	NR	NR	26*	NR	NR	51	NR	NR	87	NR	NR	133	NR	NR	182	NR	NR	246	NR	NR	327	NR	NR	422	673	1003	638	NR	NR	638	
	8	NR	NR	23*	NR	NR	47*	NR	NR	82	NR	NR	126	NR	NR	174	NR	NR	237	NR	NR	317	NR	NR	408	747	985	621	NR	NR	621	
10	2	NR	NR	31	NR	NR	61	NR	NR	102	NR	NR	161	NR	NR	220	216	518	297	271	654	387	373	808	490	536	1142	722	NR	NR	722	
	5	NR	NR	28*	NR	NR	56	NR	NR	95	NR	NR	147	NR	NR	203	NR	NR	276	334	635	364	459	789	465	657	1121	710	NR	NR	710	
	10	NR	NR	24*	NR	NR	49*	NR	NR	86	NR	NR	137	NR	NR	189	NR	NR	261	NR	NR	345	547	758	441	771	1088	665	NR	NR	665	
15	2	NR	NR	35*	NR	NR	67	NR	NR	113	NR	NR	178	166	473	249	211	611	335	264	776	440	362	965	560	520	1373	840	NR	NR	840	
	5	NR	NR	32*	NR	NR	61	NR	NR	106	NR	NR	163	NR	NR	230	261	591	312	325	755	414	444	942	531	637	1348	825	NR	NR	825	
	10	NR	NR	27*	NR	NR	54*	NR	NR	96	NR	NR	151	NR	NR	214	NR	NR	294	392	722	392	531	907	504	749	1309	774	NR	NR	774	
	15	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	46*	NR	NR	87*	NR	NR	138	NR	NR	198	NR	NR	278	452	692	372	606	873	481	841	1272	738	NR	NR	738	
20	2	NR	NR	38*	NR	NR	73	NR	NR	123	NR	NR	200	163	520	273	206	675	374	258	864	490	252	1079	625	508	1544	950	NR	NR	950	
	5	NR	NR	35*	NR	NR	67*	NR	NR	115	NR	NR	183	NR	NR	252	255	655	348	317	842	461	433	1055	594	623	1518	930	NR	NR	930	
	10	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	59*	NR	NR	105*	NR	NR	170	NR	NR	235	312	622	330	382	806	437	517	1016	562	733	1475	875	NR	NR	875	
	15	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	95*	NR	NR	156	NR	NR	217	NR	NR	311	442	773	414	591	979	539	823	1434	835	NR	NR	835	
	20	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	80*	NR	NR	144*	NR	NR	202	NR	NR	292	NR	NR	392	663	944	510	911	1394	800	NR	NR	800	

Table 11-4 (Continued)

30	2	NR	NR	41*	NR	NR	81*	NR	NR	136	NR	NR	215	158	578	302	200	759	420	249	982	556	340	1237	715	489	1789	1110
	5	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	75*	NR	NR	127*	NR	NR	196	NR	NR	279	245	737	391	306	958	524	417	1210	680	600	1760	1090
	10	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	66*	NR	NR	113*	NR	NR	182*	NR	NR	260	300	703	370	370	920	496	500	1168	644	708	1713	1020
	15	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	105*	NR	NR	168*	NR	NR	240*	NR	NR	349	428	884	471	572	1128	615	798	1668	975
	20	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	88*	NR	NR	155*	NR	NR	223*	NR	NR	327	NR	NR	445	643	1089	585	883	1624	932
	30	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	182*	NR	NR	281*	NR	NR	408	NR	NR	544	1055	1539	865
50	2	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	91*	NR	NR	160*	NR	NR	250*	NR	NR	350*	191	837	475	238	1103	631	323	1408	810	463	2076	1240
	5	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	149*	NR	NR	228*	NR	NR	321*	NR	NR	442	293	1078	593	398	1381	770	571	2044	1220
	10	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	136*	NR	NR	212*	NR	NR	301*	NR	NR	420*	355	1038	562	447	1337	728	674	1994	1140
	15	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	124*	NR	NR	195*	NR	NR	278*	NR	NR	395*	NR	NR	533*	546	1294	695	761	1945	1090
	20	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	180*	NR	NR	258*	NR	NR	370*	NR	NR	504*	616	1251	660*	844	1898	1040
	30	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	318*	NR	NR	458*	NR	NR	610*	1009	1805	970
Minimum Internal Area of Chimney Square Inches		12			19			28			38			50			63			78			95			132		
Maximum Internal Area of Chimney Square Inches		49			88			137			198			269			352			445			550			792		

* See Note 6

Table 11-5
Capacity of Single-Wall Metal Pipe or Type B Asbestos Cement Vents
Serving a Single Draft Hood Equipped Appliance

Height H (ft)	Lateral L (ft)	Vent Diameter — D							
		3"	4"	5"	6"	7"	8"	10"	12"
		Maximum Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour							
6	0	39	70	116	170	232	312	500	750
	2	31	55	94	141	194	260	415	620
	5	28	51	88	128	177	242	390	600
8	0	42	76	126	185	252	340	542	815
	2	32	61	102	154	210	284	451	680
	5	29	56	95	141	194	264	430	648
	10	24*	49	86	131	180	250	406	625
10	0	45	84	138	202	279	372	606	912
	2	35	67	111	168	233	311	505	760
	5	32	61	104	153	215	289	480	724
	10	27*	54	94	143	200	274	455	700
	15	NR	46*	84	130	186	258	432	666
15	0	49	91	151	223	312	420	684	1040
	2	39	72	122	186	260	350	570	865
	5	35*	67	110	170	240	325	540	825
	10	30*	58*	103	158	223	308	514	795
	15	NR	50*	93*	144	207	291	488	760
	20	NR	NR	82*	132*	195	273	466	726
20	0	53*	101	163	252	342	470	770	1190
	2	42*	80	136	210	286	392	641	990
	5	38*	74*	123	192	264	364	610	945
	10	32*	65*	115*	178	246	345	571	910
	15	NR	55*	104*	163	228	326	550	870
	20	NR	NR	91*	149*	214*	306	525	832
30	0	56*	108*	183	276	384	529	878	1370
	2	44*	84*	148*	230	320	441	730	1140
	5	NR	78*	137*	210	296	410	694	1080
	10	NR	68*	125*	196*	274	388	656	1050
	15	NR	NR	113*	177*	258*	366	625	1000
	20	NR	NR	99*	163*	240*	344	596	960
	30	NR	NR	NR	NR	192*	295*	540	890
50	0	NR	120*	210*	310*	443*	590	980	1550
	2	NR	95*	171*	260*	370*	492	820	1290
	5	NR	NR	159*	234*	342*	474	780	1230
	10	NR	NR	146*	221*	318*	456*	730	1190
	15	NR	NR	NR	200*	292*	407*	705	1130
	20	NR	NR	NR	185*	276*	384*	670*	1080
	30	NR	NR	NR	NR	222*	330*	605*	1010

*See Note 6

Notes for Multiple Appliance Vent — Tables 11-6 through 11-10

1. These venting tables shall not be used where obstructions, as described in the exceptions to Section 7.15, are installed in the venting system.
2. The maximum vent connector horizontal length shall be 1½ feet (18 inches) for each inch (18 cm per cm) of connector diameter as follows:

Connector Diameter Maximum (INCHES)	Connector Horizontal Length (FEET)
3	4½
4	6
5	7½
6	9
7	10½
8	12
9	13½
10	15
12	18
14	21
16	24
18	27
20	30
22	33
24	36

For SI units: 1 inch = 2.54 cm; 1 foot = 0.305 m

3. The vent connector shall be routed to the vent utilizing the shortest possible route. Connectors with longer horizontal lengths than those listed above are permitted under the following conditions:

(a) The maximum capacity (FAN Max or NAT Max) of the vent connector shall be reduced 10 percent for each additional multiple of the length listed above. For example, the maximum length listed above for a 4-inch (10-cm) connector is 6 feet (1.8 m). With a connector length greater than 6 feet (1.8 m) but not exceeding 12 feet (3.7 m), the maximum capacity must be reduced by 10 percent ($0.90 \times$ maximum vent connector capacity). With a connector length greater than 12 feet (3.7 m) but not exceeding 18 feet (5.5 m), the maximum capacity must be reduced by 20 percent ($0.80 \times$ maximum vent capacity).

(b) The minimum capacity (FAN Min) shall be determined by referring to the corresponding single appliance table (Tables 11-1 and 11-2). In this case, for each appliance, the entire vent connector and common vent from the appliance to the vent termination shall be treated as a single appliance vent, as if the other appliances were not present.

4. If the vent connectors are combined prior to entering the common vent, the maximum common vent capacity listed in the common

venting tables shall be reduced by 10 percent ($0.90 \times$ maximum common vent capacity). The length of the common vent connector manifold (L_o) shall not exceed $1\frac{1}{2}$ feet (18 inches) for each inch (18 cm per cm) of common vent connector manifold diameter (D). (See Figure G-11.)

5. If the common vertical vent is offset as shown in Figure G-12, the maximum common vent capacity listed in the common venting tables shall be reduced by 20 percent ($0.80 \times$ maximum common vent capacity), the equivalent of two 90-degree turns. The horizontal length of the common vent offset (L_o) shall not exceed $1\frac{1}{2}$ feet for each inch (18 cm per cm) of common vent diameter (D).

6. Excluding elbows counted in Note 5, for each additional 90-degree turn in excess of two, the maximum capacity of that portion of the venting system shall be reduced by 10 percent ($0.90 \times$ maximum common vent capacity).

NOTE: Two 45-degree turns are equivalent to one 90-degree turn.

7. The common vent diameter shall be at least as large as the largest vent connector diameter.

8. Interconnection fittings shall be the same size as the common vent.

9. Sea level input ratings shall be used when determining maximum capacity for high altitude installation. Actual input (derated for altitude) shall be used for determining minimum capacity for high altitude installation.

10. For multiple units of gas utilization equipment all located on one floor, available total height (H) shall be measured from the highest draft hood outlet or flue collar up to the level of the cap or terminal. Connector rise (R) shall be measured from the draft hood outlet or flue collar to the level where the vent gas streams come together (not applicable to multistory).

11. For multistory installations, available total height (H) for each segment of the system shall be the vertical distance between the highest draft hood outlet or flue collar entering that segment and the centerline of the next higher interconnection tee. (See Figure G-13.)

12. The size of the lowest connector and of the vertical vent leading to the lowest interconnection of a multistory system shall be in accordance with Table 11-1 or 11-2 for available total height (H) up to the lowest interconnection. (See Figure G-14.)

13. Where used in multistory systems, vertical common vents shall be Type B double-wall and shall have no offsets.

14. Where two or more appliances are connected to a vertical vent or chimney, the flow area of the largest section of vertical vent or chimney shall not exceed seven times the smallest listed appliance categorized vent areas, flue collar area, or draft hood outlet area unless designed in accordance with approved engineering methods.

15. For appliances with more than one input rate, the minimum vent connector capacity (FAN Min) determined from the tables shall not be less than the lowest appliance input rating, and the maximum vent connector capacity (FAN Max or NAT Max) determined from the tables shall be greater than the highest appliance input rating.

16. Listed, corrugated metallic chimney liner systems in masonry chimneys shall be sized by using Table 11-6 or 11-7 for Type B vents, with the maximum capacity reduced by 20 percent ($0.80 \times$ maximum capacity) and the minimum capacity as shown in Table 11-6 or 11-7. Corrugated metal vent systems installed with bends or offsets require additional reduction of the vent maximum capacity. (*See Note 6.*)

17. The tables included in this Part shall be used for chimneys and vents not exposed to the outdoors below the roof line. Chimneys or vents exposed to the outdoors below the roof line may experience continuous condensation, depending on locality. Consult the appliance manufacturer, the local serving gas supplier, or the authority having jurisdiction. A Type B vent or listed chimney lining system passing through an unused masonry chimney flue shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors.

18. Vent connectors shall not be upsized more than two sizes greater than the listed appliance categorized vent diameter, flue collar diameter, or draft hood outlet diameter. Vent connectors shall not be smaller than the listed appliance categorized vent diameter, flue collar diameter, or draft hood outlet diameter.

19. All combination of pipe sizes, single-wall, and double-wall metal pipe shall be allowed within any connector run(s) or within the common vent, provided ALL of the appropriate tables permit ALL of the desired sizes and types of pipe, as if they were used for the entire length of the subject connector or vent. If single-wall and Type B double-wall metal pipes are used for vent connectors, the common vent must be sized using Table 11-7 or 11-9 as appropriate.

20. Where a table permits more than one diameter of pipe to be used for a connector or vent, all the permitted sizes shall be permitted to be used.

NOTE: In general, it is preferable to use the smallest diameter permitted to minimize heat loss.

21. Interpolation beyond the table entries shall not be permitted. (*See Example 3, Appendix G.*)

22. Extrapolation beyond the table entries shall not be permitted.

For SI units: 1 inch = 2.54 cm; $1 \text{ inch}^2 = 6.45 \text{ cm}^2$; 1 foot = 0.305 m; 1000 Btu per hour = 0.293 kw

Table 11-6
Capacity of Type B Double-Wall Vents with Type B Double-Wall
Connectors Serving Two or More Category I Appliances

Vent Connector Capacity

Vent Height H (ft)		Connector Rise R (ft)		Type B Double-Wall Vent and Connector Diameter — D																							
				3"		4"		5"		6"		7"		8"		9"		10"									
				Appliance Input Rating Limits in Thousands of Btu per Hour																							
				FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT			
Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	
6	1	22	37	26	35	66	46	46	106	72	58	164	104	77	225	142	92	296	185	109	376	237	128	466	289		
	2	23	41	31	37	75	55	48	121	86	60	183	124	79	253	168	95	333	220	112	424	282	131	526	345		
	3	24	44	35	38	81	62	49	132	96	62	199	139	82	275	189	97	363	248	114	463	317	134	575	386		
8	1	22	40	27	35	72	48	49	114	76	64	176	109	84	243	148	100	320	194	118	408	248	138	507	303		
	2	23	44	32	36	80	57	51	128	90	66	195	129	86	269	175	103	356	230	121	454	294	141	564	358		
	3	24	47	36	37	87	64	53	139	101	67	210	145	88	290	198	105	384	258	123	492	330	143	612	402		
10	1	22	43	28	34	78	50	49	123	78	65	189	113	89	257	154	106	341	200	125	436	257	146	542	314		
	2	23	47	33	36	86	59	51	136	93	67	206	134	91	282	182	109	374	238	128	479	305	149	596	372		
	3	24	50	37	37	92	67	52	146	104	69	220	150	94	303	205	111	402	268	131	515	342	152	642	417		
15	1	21	50	30	33	89	53	47	142	83	64	220	120	88	298	163	110	389	214	134	493	273	162	609	333		
	2	22	53	35	35	96	63	49	153	99	66	235	142	91	320	193	112	419	253	137	532	323	165	658	394		
	3	24	55	40	36	102	71	51	163	111	68	248	160	93	339	218	115	445	286	140	565	365	167	700	444		
20	1	21	54	31	33	99	56	46	157	87	62	246	125	86	334	171	107	436	224	131	552	285	158	681	347		
	2	22	57	37	34	105	66	48	167	104	64	259	149	89	354	202	110	463	265	134	587	339	161	725	414		
	3	23	60	42	35	110	74	50	176	116	66	271	168	91	371	228	113	486	300	137	618	383	164	764	466		
30	1	20	62	33	31	113	59	45	181	93	60	288	134	83	391	182	103	512	238	125	649	305	151	802	372		
	2	21	64	39	33	118	70	47	190	110	62	299	158	85	408	215	105	535	282	129	679	360	155	840	439		
	3	22	66	44	34	123	79	48	198	124	64	309	178	88	423	242	108	555	317	132	706	405	158	874	494		
50	1	19	71	36	30	133	64	43	216	101	57	349	145	78	477	197	97	627	257	120	797	330	144	984	403		
	2	21	73	43	32	137	76	45	223	119	59	358	172	81	490	234	100	645	306	123	820	392	148	1014	478		
	3	22	75	48	33	141	86	46	229	134	61	366	194	83	502	263	103	661	343	126	842	441	151	1043	538		
100	1	18	82	37	28	158	66	40	262	104	53	442	150	73	611	204	91	810	266	112	1038	341	135	1285	417		
	2	19	83	44	30	161	79	42	267	123	55	447	178	75	619	242	94	822	316	115	1054	405	139	1306	494		
	3	20	84	50	31	163	89	44	272	138	57	452	200	78	627	272	97	834	355	118	1069	455	142	1327	555		

Table 11-6 (Continued)

Common Vent Capacity

Vent Height H (ft)	Type B Double-Wall Common Vent Diameter — D																				
	4"			5"			6"			7"			8"			9"			10"		
	Combined Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour																				
	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT
6	92	81	65	140	116	103	204	161	147	309	248	200	404	314	260	547	434	335	672	520	410
8	101	90	73	155	129	114	224	178	163	339	275	223	444	348	290	602	480	378	740	577	465
10	110	97	79	169	141	124	243	194	178	367	299	242	477	377	315	649	522	405	800	627	495
15	125	112	91	195	164	144	283	228	206	427	352	280	556	444	365	753	612	465	924	733	565
20	136	123	102	215	183	160	314	255	229	475	394	310	621	499	405	842	688	523	1035	826	640
30	152	138	118	244	210	185	361	297	266	547	459	360	720	585	470	979	808	605	1209	975	740
50	167	153	134	279	244	214	421	353	310	641	547	423	854	706	550	1164	977	705	1451	1188	860
100	175	163	NR	311	277	NR	489	421	NR	751	658	479	1025	873	625	1408	1215	800	1784	1502	975

Table 11-6 (Continued)
Capacity of Type B Double-Wall Vents with Type B Double-Wall
Connectors Serving Two or More Category I Appliances

Vent Connector Capacity

Vent Height H (ft)		Connector Rise R (ft)		Type B Double-Wall Vent and Connector Diameter — D																				
				12"			14"			16"			18"			20"			22"			24"		
				Appliance Input Rating Limits in Thousands of Btu per Hour																				
				FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	
6	2	174	764	496	223	1046	653	281	1371	853	346	1772	1080	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	
	4	180	897	616	230	1231	827	287	1617	1081	352	2069	1370	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	
	6	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	
8	2	186	822	516	238	1126	696	298	1478	910	365	1920	1150	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	
	4	192	952	644	244	1307	884	305	1719	1150	372	2211	1460	471	2737	1800	560	3319	2180	662	3957	2590		
	6	198	1050	772	252	1445	1072	313	1902	1390	380	2434	1770	478	3018	2180	568	3665	2640	669	4373	3130		
10	2	196	870	536	249	1195	730	311	1570	955	379	2049	1205	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	
	4	201	997	664	256	1371	924	318	1804	1205	387	2332	1535	486	2887	1890	581	3502	2280	686	4175	2710		
	6	207	1095	792	263	1509	1118	325	1989	1455	395	2556	1865	494	3169	2290	589	3849	2760	694	4593	3270		
15	2	214	967	568	272	1334	790	336	1760	1030	408	2317	1305	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	
	4	221	1085	712	279	1499	1006	344	1978	1320	416	2579	1665	523	3197	2060	624	3881	2490	734	4631	2960		
	6	228	1181	856	286	1632	1222	351	2157	1610	424	2796	2025	533	3470	2510	634	4216	3030	743	5035	3600		
20	2	223	1051	596	291	1443	840	357	1911	1095	430	2533	1385	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	
	4	230	1162	748	298	1597	1064	365	2116	1395	438	2778	1765	554	3447	2180	661	4190	2630	772	5005	3130		
	6	237	1253	900	307	1726	1288	373	2287	1695	450	2984	2145	567	3708	2650	671	4511	3190	785	5392	3790		
30	2	216	1217	632	286	1664	910	367	2183	1190	461	2891	1540	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	
	4	223	1316	792	294	1802	1160	376	2366	1510	474	3110	1920	619	3840	2365	728	4861	2860	847	5606	3410		
	6	231	1400	952	303	1920	1410	384	2524	1830	485	3299	2340	632	4080	2875	741	4976	3480	860	5961	4150		
50	2	206	1479	689	273	2023	1007	350	2659	1315	435	3548	1665	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	
	4	213	1561	860	281	2139	1291	359	2814	1685	447	3730	2135	580	4601	2633	709	5569	3185	851	6633	3790		
	6	221	1631	1031	290	2242	1575	369	2951	2055	461	3893	2605	594	4808	3208	724	5826	3885	867	6943	4620		
100	2	192	1923	712	254	2644	1050	326	3490	1370	402	4707	1740	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	
	4	200	1984	888	263	2731	1346	336	3606	1760	414	4842	2220	523	5982	2750	639	7254	3330	769	8650	3950		
	6	208	2035	1064	272	2811	1642	346	3714	2150	426	4968	2700	539	6143	3350	654	7453	4070	786	8892	4810		

Table 11-6 (Continued)

Common Vent Capacity

Vent Height H (ft)	Type B Double-Wall Common Vent Diameter — D																				
	12"			14"			16"			18"			20"			22"			24"		
	Combined Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour																				
	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT
6	900	696	588	1284	990	815	1735	1336	1065	2253	1732	1345	2838	2180	1660	3488	2677	1970	4206	3226	2390
8	994	773	652	1423	1103	912	1927	1491	1190	2507	1936	1510	3162	2439	1860	3890	2998	2200	4695	3616	2680
10	1076	841	712	1542	1200	995	2093	1625	1300	2727	2113	1645	3444	2665	2030	4241	3278	2400	5123	3957	2920
15	1247	986	825	1794	1410	1158	2440	1910	1510	3184	2484	1910	4026	3133	2360	4971	3862	2790	6016	4670	3400
20	1405	1116	916	2006	1588	1290	2722	2147	1690	3561	2798	2140	4548	3552	2640	5573	4352	3120	6749	5261	3800
30	1658	1327	1025	2373	1892	1525	3220	2558	1990	4197	3326	2520	5303	4193	3110	6539	5157	3680	7940	6247	4480
50	2024	1640	1280	2911	2347	1863	3964	3183	2430	5184	4149	3075	6567	5240	3800	8116	6458	4500	9837	7813	5475
100	2569	2131	1670	3732	3076	2450	5125	4202	3200	6749	5509	4050	8597	6986	5000	10681	8648	5920	13004	10499	7200

Table 11-7
Capacity of Type B Double-Wall Vent with Single-Wall
Connectors Serving Two or More Category I Appliances

Vent Connector Capacity

Vent Height H (ft)		Connector Rise R (ft)		Single-Wall Metal Vent Connector Diameter — D																							
				3"		4"			5"			6"			7"			8"			9"			10"			
				Appliance Input Rating Limits in Thousands of Btu per Hour																							
				FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	
6	1	NR	NR	26	NR	NR	46	NR	NR	71	NR	NR	102	207	223	140	262	293	183	325	373	234	447	463	286		
	2	NR	NR	31	NR	NR	55	NR	NR	85	168	182	123	215	251	167	271	331	219	334	422	281	458	524	344		
	3	NR	NR	34	NR	NR	62	121	131	95	175	198	138	222	273	188	279	361	247	344	462	316	468	574	385		
8	1	NR	NR	27	NR	NR	48	NR	NR	75	NR	NR	106	226	240	145	285	316	191	352	403	244	481	502	299		
	2	NR	NR	32	NR	NR	57	125	126	89	184	193	127	234	266	173	293	353	228	360	450	292	492	560	355		
	3	NR	NR	35	NR	NR	64	130	138	100	191	208	144	241	287	197	302	381	256	370	489	328	501	609	400		
10	1	NR	NR	28	NR	NR	50	119	121	77	182	186	110	240	253	150	302	335	196	372	429	252	506	534	308		
	2	NR	NR	33	84	85	59	124	134	91	189	203	132	248	278	183	311	369	235	381	473	302	517	589	368		
	3	NR	NR	36	89	91	67	129	144	102	197	217	148	257	299	203	320	398	265	391	511	339	528	637	413		
15	1	NR	NR	29	79	87	52	116	138	81	177	214	116	238	291	158	312	380	208	397	482	266	556	596	324		
	2	NR	NR	34	83	94	62	121	150	97	185	230	138	246	314	189	321	411	248	407	522	317	568	646	387		
	3	NR	NR	39	87	100	70	127	160	109	193	243	157	255	333	215	331	438	281	418	557	360	579	690	437		
20	1	49	56	30	78	97	54	115	152	84	175	238	120	233	325	165	306	425	217	390	538	276	546	664	336		
	2	52	59	36	82	103	64	120	163	101	182	252	144	243	346	197	317	453	259	400	574	331	558	709	403		
	3	55	62	40	87	107	72	125	172	113	190	264	164	252	363	223	326	476	294	412	607	375	570	750	457		
30	1	47	60	31	77	110	57	112	175	89	169	278	129	226	380	175	296	497	230	378	630	294	528	779	358		
	2	51	62	37	81	115	67	117	185	106	177	290	152	236	397	208	307	521	274	389	662	349	541	819	425		
	3	54	64	42	85	119	76	122	193	120	185	300	172	244	412	235	316	542	309	400	690	394	555	855	482		
50	1	46	69	34	75	128	60	109	207	96	162	336	137	217	460	188	284	604	245	364	768	314	507	951	384		
	2	49	71	40	79	132	72	114	215	113	170	345	164	226	473	223	294	623	293	376	793	375	520	983	458		
	3	52	72	45	83	136	82	119	221	123	178	353	186	235	486	252	304	640	331	387	816	423	535	1013	518		
100	1	45	79	34	71	150	61	104	249	98	153	424	140	205	585	192	269	774	249	345	993	321	476	1236	393		
	2	48	80	41	75	153	73	110	255	115	160	428	167	212	593	228	279	788	299	358	1011	383	490	1259	469		
	3	51	81	46	79	157	85	114	260	129	168	433	190	222	603	256	289	801	339	368	1027	431	506	1280	527		

Table 11-7 (Continued)

Common Vent Capacity

Vent Height H (ft)	Type B Double-Wall Vent Diameter — D																				
	4"			5"			6"			7"			8"			9"			10"		
	Combined Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour																				
	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT
6	NR	78	64	NR	113	99	200	158	144	304	244	196	398	310	257	541	429	332	665	515	407
8	NR	87	71	NR	126	111	218	173	159	331	269	218	436	342	285	592	473	373	730	569	460
10	NR	94	76	163	137	120	237	189	174	357	292	236	467	369	309	638	512	398	787	617	487
15	121	108	88	189	159	140	275	221	200	416	343	274	544	434	357	738	599	456	905	718	553
20	131	118	98	208	177	156	305	247	223	463	383	302	606	487	395	824	673	512	1013	808	626
30	145	132	113	236	202	180	350	286	257	533	446	349	703	570	459	958	790	593	1183	952	723
50	159	145	128	268	233	208	406	337	296	622	529	410	833	686	535	1139	954	689	1418	1157	838
100	166	153	NR	297	263	NR	469	398	NR	726	633	464	999	846	606	1378	1185	780	1741	1459	948

Table 11-8
Capacity of Masonry Chimney with Type B Double-Wall
Connectors Serving Two or More Category I Appliances

Vent Connector Capacity

Vent Height H (ft)		Connector Rise R (ft)		Type B Double-Wall Vent Connector Diameter — D																							
				3"			4"			5"			6"			7"			8"			9"			10"		
				Appliance Input Rating Limits in Thousands of Btu per Hour																							
				FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
Min		Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	1 2 3	24	33	21	39	62	40	52	106	67	65	194	101	87	274	141	104	370	201	124	479	253	145	599	319		
		26	43	28	41	79	52	53	133	85	67	230	124	89	324	173	107	436	232	127	562	300	148	694	378		
		27	49	34	42	92	61	55	155	97	69	262	143	91	369	203	109	491	270	129	633	349	151	795	439		
8	1 2 3	24	39	22	39	72	41	55	117	69	71	213	105	94	304	148	113	414	210	134	539	267	156	682	335		
		26	47	29	40	87	53	57	140	86	73	246	127	97	350	179	116	473	240	137	615	311	160	776	394		
		27	52	34	42	97	62	59	159	98	75	269	145	99	383	206	119	517	276	139	672	358	163	848	452		
10	1 2 3	24	42	22	38	80	42	55	130	71	74	232	108	101	324	153	120	444	216	142	582	277	165	739	348		
		26	50	29	40	93	54	57	153	87	76	261	129	103	366	184	123	498	247	145	652	321	168	825	407		
		27	55	35	41	105	63	58	170	100	78	284	148	106	397	209	126	540	281	147	705	366	171	893	463		
15	1 2 3	24	48	23	38	93	44	54	154	74	72	277	114	100	384	164	125	511	229	153	658	297	184	824	375		
		25	55	31	39	105	55	56	174	89	74	299	134	103	419	192	128	558	260	156	718	339	187	900	432		
		26	59	35	41	115	64	57	189	102	76	319	153	105	448	215	131	597	292	159	760	382	190	960	486		
20	1 2 3	24	52	24	37	102	46	53	172	77	71	313	119	98	437	173	123	584	239	150	752	312	180	943	397		
		25	58	31	39	114	56	55	190	91	73	335	138	101	467	199	126	625	270	153	805	354	184	1011	452		
		26	63	35	40	123	65	57	204	104	75	353	157	104	493	222	129	661	301	156	851	396	187	1067	505		
30	1 2 3	24	54	25	37	111	48	52	192	82	69	357	127	96	504	187	119	680	255	145	883	337	175	1115	432		
		25	60	32	38	122	58	54	208	95	72	376	145	99	531	209	122	715	287	149	928	378	179	1171	484		
		26	64	36	40	131	66	56	221	107	74	392	163	101	554	233	125	746	317	152	968	418	182	1220	535		
50	1 2 3	23	51	25	36	116	51	51	209	89	67	405	143	92	582	213	115	798	294	140	1049	392	168	1334	506		
		24	59	32	37	127	61	53	225	102	70	421	161	95	604	235	118	827	326	143	1085	433	172	1379	558		
		26	64	36	39	135	69	55	237	115	72	435	180	98	624	260	121	854	357	147	1118	474	176	1421	611		
100	1 2 3	23	46	24	35	108	50	49	208	92	65	428	155	88	640	237	109	907	334	134	1222	454	161	1589	596		
		24	53	31	37	120	60	51	224	105	67	444	174	92	660	260	113	933	368	138	1253	497	165	1626	651		
		25	59	35	38	130	68	53	237	118	69	458	193	94	679	285	116	956	399	141	1282	540	169	1661	705		

Table 11-8 (Continued)

Common Vent Capacity

Vent Height H (ft)	Minimum Internal Area of Masonry Chimney Flue, Square Inches																							
	12			19			28			38			50			63			78			113		
	Combined Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour																							
	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT
6	NR	74	25	NR	119	46	NR	178	71	NR	257	103	NR	351	143	NR	458	188	NR	582	246	1041	853	NR
8	NR	80	28	NR	130	53	NR	193	82	NR	279	119	NR	384	163	NR	501	218	724	636	278	1144	937	408
10	NR	84	31	NR	138	56	NR	207	90	NR	299	131	NR	409	177	606	538	236	776	686	302	1226	1010	454
15	NR	NR	36	NR	152	67	NR	233	106	NR	334	152	523	467	212	682	611	283	874	781	365	1374	1156	546
20	NR	NR	41	NR	NR	75	NR	250	122	NR	368	172	565	508	243	742	668	325	955	858	419	1513	1286	648
30	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	270	137	NR	404	198	615	564	278	816	747	381	1062	969	496	1702	1473	749
50	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	620	328	879	831	461	1165	1089	606	1905	1692	922
100	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	348	NR	NR	499	NR	NR	669	2053	1921	1058

Table 11-9
Capacity of Masonry Chimney with Single-Wall
Connectors Serving Two or More Category I Appliances

Vent Connector Capacity

Vent Height H (ft)		Connector Rise R (ft)		Single-Wall Metal Vent Connector Diameter — D																							
				3"			4"			5"			6"			7"			8"			9"			10"		
				Appliance Input Rating Limits in Thousands of Btu per Hour																							
				FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	
6	1	NR	NR	21	NR	NR	39	NR	NR	66	179	191	100	231	271	140	292	366	200	362	474	252	499	594	316		
	2	NR	NR	28	NR	NR	52	NR	NR	84	186	227	123	239	321	172	301	432	231	373	557	299	509	696	376		
	3	NR	NR	34	NR	NR	61	134	153	97	193	258	142	247	365	202	309	491	269	381	634	348	519	793	437		
8	1	NR	NR	21	NR	NR	40	NR	NR	68	195	208	103	250	298	146	313	407	207	387	530	263	529	672	331		
	2	NR	NR	28	NR	NR	52	137	139	85	202	240	125	258	343	177	323	465	238	397	607	309	540	766	391		
	3	NR	NR	34	NR	NR	62	143	156	98	210	264	145	266	376	205	332	509	274	407	663	356	551	838	450		
10	1	NR	NR	22	NR	NR	41	130	151	70	202	225	106	267	316	151	333	434	213	410	571	273	558	727	343		
	2	NR	NR	29	NR	NR	53	136	150	86	210	255	128	276	358	181	343	489	244	420	640	317	569	813	403		
	3	NR	NR	34	97	102	62	143	166	99	217	277	147	284	389	207	352	530	279	430	694	363	580	880	459		
15	1	NR	NR	23	NR	NR	43	129	151	73	199	271	112	268	376	161	349	502	225	445	646	291	623	808	366		
	2	NR	NR	30	92	103	54	135	170	88	207	295	132	277	411	189	359	548	256	456	706	334	634	884	424		
	3	NR	NR	34	96	112	63	141	185	101	215	315	151	286	439	213	368	586	289	466	755	378	646	945	479		
20	1	NR	NR	23	87	99	45	128	167	76	197	303	117	265	425	169	345	569	235	439	734	306	614	921	387		
	2	NR	NR	30	91	111	55	134	185	90	205	325	136	274	455	195	355	610	266	450	787	348	627	986	443		
	3	NR	NR	35	96	119	64	140	199	103	213	343	154	282	481	219	365	644	298	461	831	391	639	1042	496		
30	1	NR	NR	24	86	108	47	126	187	80	193	347	124	259	492	183	338	665	250	430	864	330	600	1089	421		
	2	NR	NR	31	91	119	57	132	203	93	201	366	142	269	518	205	348	699	282	442	908	372	613	1145	473		
	3	NR	NR	35	95	127	65	138	216	105	209	381	160	277	540	229	358	729	312	452	946	412	626	1193	524		
50	1	NR	NR	24	85	113	50	124	204	87	188	392	139	252	567	208	328	778	287	417	1022	383	582	1302	492		
	2	NR	NR	31	89	123	60	130	218	100	196	408	158	262	588	230	339	806	320	429	1058	425	596	1346	545		
	3	NR	NR	35	94	131	68	136	231	112	205	422	176	271	607	255	349	831	351	440	1090	466	610	1386	597		
100	1	NR	NR	23	84	104	49	122	200	89	182	410	151	243	617	232	315	875	328	402	1181	444	560	1537	580		
	2	NR	NR	30	88	115	59	127	215	102	190	425	169	253	636	254	326	899	361	415	1210	488	575	1570	634		
	3	NR	NR	34	93	124	67	133	228	115	199	438	188	262	654	279	337	921	392	427	1238	529	589	1604	687		

Table 11-10
Capacity of Single-Wall Metal Pipe or Type B Asbestos Cement Vent
Serving Two or More Draft Hood-Equipped Appliances

Vent Connector Capacity

Total Vent Height H	Connector Rise R	Vent Connector Diameter—D					
		3"	4"	5"	6"	7"	8"
		Maximum Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour					
6'-8'	1'	21	40	68	102	146	205
	2'	28	53	86	124	178	235
	3'	34	61	98	147	204	275
15'	1'	23	44	77	117	179	240
	2'	30	56	92	134	194	265
	3'	35	64	102	155	216	298
30' and up	1'	25	49	84	129	190	270
	2'	31	58	97	145	211	295
	3'	36	68	107	164	232	321

Common Vent Capacity

Total Vent Height H	Common Vent Diameter						
	4"	5"	6"	7"	8"	10"	12"
	Combined Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour						
6'	48	78	111	155	205	320	NR
8'	55	89	128	175	234	365	505
10'	59	95	136	190	250	395	560
15'	71	115	168	228	305	480	690
20'	80	129	186	260	340	550	790
30'	NR	147	215	300	400	650	940
50'	NR	NR	NR	360	490	810	1190

See Figure G-6 and Notes for Multiple Appliance Vents.

Part 12

Referenced Publications

12.1 The following documents or portions thereof are referenced within this *Code* and shall be considered part of the requirements of this document. The edition indicated for each reference is the current edition as of the date of the issuance of this document.

12.1.1 AGA Publications. American Gas Association, 1515 Wilson Boulevard, Arlington, VA 22209.

ANSI Z21.8-1984, *Standard for Installation of Domestic Gas Conversion Burners*

ANSI Z21.18-1987, *Standard for Gas Appliance Pressure Regulators*

ANSI Z21.69-1987, *Connectors for Movable Gas Appliances*

ANSI Z83.18-1987, *Direct Gas-Fired Industrial Air Heaters*

ANSI/AGA LC 1-1991, *Interior Fuel Gas Piping Systems Using Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing*

12.1.2 ANSI Publication. American National Standards Institute, Inc., 1430 Broadway, New York, NY 10018.

ANSI A21.52-1991, *Standard for Ductile-Iron Pipe, Centrifugally Cast, in Metal Molds or Sand-Lined Molds, for Gas*

12.1.3 ASME Publications. American Society of Mechanical Engineers, United Engineering Center, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.

ANSI/ASME B1.20.1-1983, *Standard for Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)*

ANSI/ASME B16.1-1989, *Standard for Cast Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings, Class 25, 125, 250, and 800*

ANSI/ASME B16.20-1973, *Standard for Ring-Joint Gaskets and Grooves for Steel Pipe Flanges*

ANSI/ASME B36.10-1985, *Standard for Welded and Seamless Wrought-Steel Pipe*

12.1.4 ASTM Publications. American Society for Testing and Materials, 1916 Race Street, Philadelphia, PA 19103.

ASTM A53-90, *Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated Welded and Seamless*

ASTM A106-91, *Standard Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-Temperature Service*

ASTM A254-91, *Standard Specification for Copper Brazed Steel Tubing*

ASTM A377-89, *Specification for Ductile Iron Pressure Pipe*

ASTM A539-90, *Standard Specification for Electric Resistance-Welded Coiled Steel Tubing for Gas and Fuel Oil Lines*

ASTM B88-89, *Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube*

ASTM B210-90, *Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Drawn Seamless Tubes*

ASTM B241-90, *Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Seamless Pipe and Seamless Extruded Tube*

ASTM B280-88, *Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service*

ASTM C64-77, *Specification for Refractories for Incinerators and Boilers*

ASTM D2513-89, *Standard Specification for Thermoplastic Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings*

12.1.5 AWWA Publication. American Water Works Association (Utilities), 6666 W. Quincy Avenue, Denver, CO 80235.

ANSI/AWWA C111/A21.11-1990, *Rubber Gasket Joints for Ductile-Iron Pressure Pipe and Fittings*

12.1.6 MSS Publications. Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry, 5203 Leesburg Pike, Suite 502, Falls Church, VA 22041.

MSS SP-6-1990, *Standard Finishes for Contact Faces of Pipe Flanges and Connecting-End Flanges of Valves and Fittings*

ANSI/MSS SP-58-1988, *Pipe Hangers and Supports—Materials, Design and Manufacture*

12.1.7 NFPA Publications. National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, P.O. Box 9101, Quincy, MA 02269-9101.

ANSI/NFPA 30A, *Automotive and Marine Service Station Code*, 1990 edition

ANSI/NFPA 37, *Standard for the Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines*, 1990 edition

ANSI/NFPA 51, *Standard for the Design and Installation of Oxygen-Fuel Gas Systems for Welding, Cutting, and Allied Processes*, 1992 edition

ANSI/NFPA 52, *Standard for Compressed Natural Gas (CNG) Vehicular Fuel Systems*, 1992 edition

ANSI/NFPA 58, *Standard for the Storage and Handling of Liquefied Petroleum Gases*, 1992 edition

ANSI/NFPA 70, *National Electrical Code*, 1993 edition

ANSI/NFPA 82, *Standard on Incinerators, Waste, and Linen Handling Systems and Equipment*, 1990 edition

ANSI/NFPA 88A, *Standard for Parking Structures*, 1991 edition

ANSI/NFPA 90A, *Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems*, 1989 edition

ANSI/NFPA 90B, *Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems*, 1989 edition

ANSI/NFPA 96, *Standard for the Installation of Equipment for the Removal of Smoke and Grease-Laden Vapors from Commercial Cooking Equipment*, 1991 edition

ANSI/NFPA 211, *Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel-Burning Appliances*, 1992 edition

ANSI/NFPA 409, *Standard on Aircraft Hangars*, 1990 edition

12.1.8 UL Publication. Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Publication Stock, 333 Pfingsten Road, Northbrook, IL 60062.

ANSI/UL 144-1985, *Pressure Regulating Valves for LP-Gas*

Appendix A

This Appendix is not a part of the requirements of this Code, but is included for information purposes only.

A.2.4.1 The size of gas piping depends upon the following factors:

- (a) Allowable loss in pressure (*see* 2.4.4) from point of delivery to equipment
- (b) Maximum gas demand
- (c) Length of piping and number of fittings
- (d) Specific gravity of the gas
- (e) Diversity factor
- (f) Foreseeable future demand.

A.2.4.3 Gas Piping Size. The gas-carrying capacities for different sizes and lengths of iron pipe, or equivalent rigid pipe, and semirigid tubing are shown in the capacity tables in Part 10.

Tables 10-1 through 10-12 indicate approximate capacities for single runs of piping. If the specific gravity of the gas is other than 0.60, correction factors shall be applied. Correction factors for use with these tables are given in Table 10-13.

For any gas piping system, for special gas utilization equipment, or for conditions other than those covered by the capacity tables in Part 10, such as longer runs, greater gas demands, or greater pressure drops, the size of each gas piping system shall be determined by standard engineering methods acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

A suggested procedure with an example of using tables to size a gas piping system is presented in Appendix C.

A.2.5.1(a) For welding specifications and procedures that may be used, see the *Standard for Welding Pipelines and Related Facilities*, API Std. 1104; *Standard for Welding Procedure and Performance Qualification*, AWS B2.1; or *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX, ANSI/ASME.

A.2.6.2(d) This is equivalent to a trace as determined by *Method of Test for Hydrogen Sulfide and Mercaptan Sulfur in Natural Gas (Cadmium Sulfate—Iodometric Titration Method)*, ANSI/ASTM D2385; or *Method of Test for Hydrogen Sulfide in Liquefied Petroleum (LP) Gases (Lead Acetate Method)*, ANSI/ASTM D2420.

A.2.6.3(b) An average of 0.3 grains of hydrogen sulfide per 100 standard cubic feet (0.7 mg per 100 l) is equivalent to a trace as determined by

Method of Test for Hydrogen Sulfide and Mercaptan Sulfur in Natural Gas (Cadmium Sulfate—Iodometric Titration Method), ANSI/ASTM D2385; or *Method of Test for Hydrogen Sulfide in Liquefied Petroleum (LP) Gases (Lead Acetate Method)*, ANSI/ASTM D2420.

A.2.6.8(a) For welding and brazing specifications and procedures that may be used, see *Standard for Welding Pipelines and Related Facilities*, API Std. 1104; *Standard for Welding Procedure and Performance Qualification*, AWS B2.1; *Standard for Brazing Procedure and Performance Qualification*, AWS B2.2; or *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX, ANSI/ASME.

A.3.6.3 Care should be taken in making mitered joints to provide proper root opening and alignment and full weld penetration.

A.4.2.2 See Appendix D for a suggested method.

A.4.3 The processes of voiding a gas pipeline of fuel gas and replacing the fuel gas with air, or charging a gas pipeline that is full of air with fuel gas, require that a significant amount of combustible mixture not be developed within the pipeline or released within a confined space.

A.5.3 Special Conditions Created by Mechanical Exhausting or Fireplaces. Operation of exhaust fans, ventilation systems, clothes dryers, or fireplaces may create conditions requiring special attention to avoid unsatisfactory operation of installed gas utilization equipment.

A.6.3.5 For details of requirements on low pressure heating boiler safety devices, refer to *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, 1986 Edition, Low Pressure Heating Boilers, Section IV, ANSI/ASME.

A.6.24.1 It is recommended that space heating appliances installed in all bedrooms or rooms generally kept closed be of the direct vent type. (See Section 6.29.)

A.6.30.9 A hole near the top of a cold water inlet tube that enters the top of the water heater or tank is commonly accepted for this purpose.

A.7.2.3 Information on the construction and installation of ventilating hoods may be obtained from *Standard for the Installation of Equipment for the Removal of Smoke and Grease-Laden Vapors from Commercial Cooking Equipment*, ANSI/NFPA 96.

A.7.3.5 See A-7.2.3.

A.7.6.3(a) Additional information on sizing venting systems can be found in:

- (a) Tables in Part 11
- (b) The gas equipment manufacturer's instructions
- (c) The venting equipment manufacturer's sizing instructions
- (d) Drawings, calculations, and specifications provided by the venting equipment manufacturer
- (e) Drawings, calculations, and specifications provided by a competent person
- (f) Reference may also be made to the chapter on chimney, gas vent, and fireplace systems of the *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Systems and Equipment*.

A.7.7.4(a) Reference may also be made to the chapter on chimney, gas vent, and fireplace systems of the *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Systems and Equipment*.

A.7.8 See Figure A.7.8.

A.7.10.3 Reference may also be made to the chapter on chimney, gas vent, and fireplace systems of the *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Systems and Equipment*.

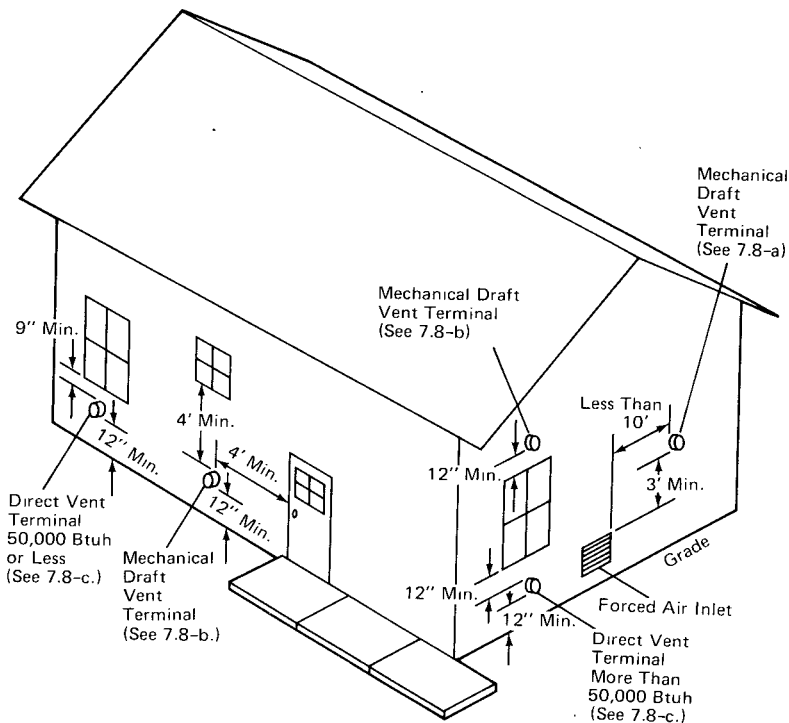
A.7.10.5 Reference may also be made to the chapter on chimney, gas vent, and fireplace systems of the *ASHRAE Handbook—HVAC Systems and Equipment*.

A.7.10.10(b) See A.7.6.3(a).

A.7.12.4 A device that will automatically shut off gas to the burner in the event of sustained backdraft is recommended if such backdraft might adversely affect burner operation or if flue gas spillage might introduce a hazard. Figure A.7.12.4 shows examples of correct and incorrect locations for barometric draft regulators.

A.8.1.1 Checking Burner Input.

(a) *Checking Burner Input Using a Meter.* To check the Btu input rate, the test hand on the meter should be timed for at least one revolution and the input determined from this timing. Test dials are generally marked $\frac{1}{2}$, 1, 2, or 5 cubic feet per revolution depending upon the



For SI units: 1 foot = 0.305 m; 1 inch = 2.54 cm; 1 Btu per hour = 0.293 watts

Figure A.7.8 Exit Terminals of Mechanical Draft and Direct Vent Venting Systems.

size of the meter. Instructions for converting the test hand readings to cubic feet per hour are given in Table XIII.

(b) *Checking Burner Input Not Using a Meter.* The fixed orifice size for each burner may be determined in accordance with Table F-1 for utility gases and Table F-2 for undiluted liquefied petroleum gases.

A.8.2 Normally, the primary air adjustment should first be set to give a soft blue flame having luminous tips and then increased to a point where the yellow tips just disappear. If the burner cannot be adjusted as above, consult the manufacturer or serving gas supplier.

Appendix B

Coordination of Gas Utilization Equipment Design, Construction, and Maintenance

This Appendix is informative and is not a part of the Code. This checklist may be helpful in the design and selection of gas utilization equipment.

B.1 Coordination.

B.1.1 Because industrial gas applications are so varied in nature, many agencies are jointly involved with their safe and satisfactory use. Prior to installation, the specific assignments should be agreed upon by the parties concerned. A typical, but not mandatory, delineation of assignments is given in B.1.2 through B.1.5, and a detailed checklist is given in B.2.

B.1.2 The person or agency planning an installation of gas equipment:

- (a) Verifies the adequacy of the gas supply, volume, pressure, and meter location
- (b) Determines suitability of gas for the process
- (c) Notifies gas suppliers of significant changes in requirements.

B.1.3 Upon request, the gas supplier furnishes the user complete information on:

- (a) Combustion characteristics and physical or chemical properties such as specific gravity, heating value, pressure, and the approximate analysis of the gas
- (b) Conditions under which an adequate supply of gas at suitable pressure can be brought to the site
- (c) Continuity of the gas supply.

B.1.4 The gas equipment manufacturer or builder provides:

- (a) Design and construction of all gas equipment or assemblies shipped from its plant
- (b) Design and construction of all gas equipment fabricated, erected, or assembled by the gas equipment manufacturer or builder in the field
- (c) A statement of the maximum hourly Btu input, type of gas, and design pressure range
- (d) Written installation and operating instructions for the user.

B.1.5 The person or agency making and the person or agency authorizing the installation of gas equipment (purchaser) jointly:

- (a) Select, erect, or assemble gas equipment, components, or designs purchased or developed by that person or agency
- (b) Ensure conformance to codes, ordinances, or regulations applicable to the installation
- (c) Provide adequate means of disposal of products of combustion
- (d) Initially operate the gas equipment in a safe manner.

B.2 Gas Equipment Design and Construction Checklist.

B.2.1 The basic design and installation should consider:

- (a) Suitability of equipment for process requirements
- (b) Adequate structural strength and stability
- (c) Reasonable life expectation
- (d) Conformance to existing safety standards
- (e) Adequate combustion space and venting
- (f) Means for observation and inspection of combustion.

B.2.2 Materials of construction used, other than pipe, fittings, and valves, should provide reasonable life expectancy for the service intended and be capable of satisfactorily withstanding:

- (a) Operating temperatures
- (b) Chemical action
- (c) Thermal shock
- (d) Load stresses.

B.2.3 Combustion systems should be selected for the characteristics of the available gas so that they will operate properly at the elevation at point of use and produce:

- (a) Proper heat distribution
- (b) Adequate operating temperature range
- (c) Suitable flame geometry
- (d) Flame stability
- (e) Operating flexibility
- (f) Desired heating chamber atmosphere.

B.2.4 Pipe, fittings, and valves shall conform to applicable American National Standards as indicated in Section 2.6. Piping, bushings, and material in fittings should not be selected nor used until the following factors have been considered:

- (a) Correct size to handle required volume (consideration of pressure drop in controls and manifolds is particularly important in low pressure systems)
- (b) Material specifications suitable for pressures and temperatures encountered
- (c) Adequate supports and protection against physical damage
- (d) Tight assembly and thorough leak inspection
- (e) Use of sufficient unions and flanges, where permitted, for convenient field replacement or repair
- (f) Arrangement of piping to provide accessibility for equipment adjustments and freedom from thermal damage.

B.2.5 Information concerning the characteristics of the gas and electricity available at the point of utilization should be specific and complete. Gas controls and electrical equipment should be selected to conform to these characteristics, which include:

- (a) Gas characteristics: Heat content, pressure, specific gravity, and approximate analysis
- (b) Electrical characteristics: Voltages, number of phases, and frequencies for both control and power circuits
- (c) Location of electrical equipment and wiring to avoid thermal damage and excessive concentrations of dust, dirt, or foreign material
- (d) Requirements of applicable electrical codes and standards, with particular reference to Article 500 of the *National Electrical Code*, ANSI/NFPA 70.

B.2.6 Temperature controls, if used, should be carefully selected considering:

- (a) Range and type of instruments and sensing elements
- (b) Type of control action
- (c) Suitability for service required
- (d) Correlation of control instruments with operating equipment.

B.2.7 In enclosed chambers, the accumulation of gas-air or solvent-air mixtures that may be accidentally ignited constitutes a potential hazard to life and property. For this reason, consideration should be given to the selection and installation of suitable protective equipment. The selection of a satisfactory protective system and components not otherwise covered by existing codes or standards should be based on the requirements of each individual installation after consultation with the various interested parties, including user, designer, insurance company, and local authorities having jurisdiction. Some of the factors and considerations involved in the selection of protective equipment are: